

The Saxon Poet's
Vita Caroli
Liber 1

A Latin Reader in Two Levels

Compiled by Aaron Decker

*Hic liber est dēdicātus discipulīs meīs
in classe Latīnae III
in annō scholasticō 2025-2026.*

*Grātiae discipulīs dantur quī versiōnem
simplicissimam probāvērunt:*

*M. A.
S. M. C.
J. C. E.
L. H.
E. J.
T. K. K.
D. J. L.
E. R. S.
D. Y.
A. Z.*

Imāgō in tegmine est dē Matthäus Merian, 1630. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Charlemagne_destroys_Krodo.jpg

Copyright ©2025 Aaron Decker
All Rights Reserved
ISBN: 9798275568059
Imprint: Independently published
decker49@gmail.com

Table of Contents

Intrōductiō.....	4
Versiō Simplicissima.....	6
Versiō Orīginālis.....	24
Bibliography & Maps.....	102

Intrōductiō

This is a Latin reader edition of the Saxon Poet's *Vīta Carolī*, Liber 1. The *Vīta Carolī* is written in poetic verse and recounts the deeds of Charlemagne. The *Vīta Carolī* consists of five books: the first four in dactylic hexameter detailing the life of Charlemagne, the fifth book in elegiac couplets giving an obituary for Charlemagne.

Nothing is known about the Saxon Poet beyond his *Vīta Carolī*, and that he composed it between 888-891 AD under King Arnulf of Carinthia.

Students new to scansion and reading Latin poetry will find the *Vīta Carolī* to be an interesting read with simple scansion. In the rare cases where elision or poetic license occurs, a footnote is provided.

A scansion guide containing scansion for each line of the poem can be downloaded from this book's GitHub repo: https://github.com/deckeraa/vita_caroli/blob/master/scansion_guide_vita_carolia_liber_1.pdf. A playlist containing read-along videos (with English translation) can be found on the ComprehensibleLatin YouTube channel: <https://www.youtube.com/@ComprehensibleLatin>.

This reader's edition was produced to meet the following goals:

- to make an inexpensive print copy of the Saxon Poet's *Vīta Carolī* available.
- to provide a legible (not photo-copied) text with macrons.
- to provide glossaries so that a Latin learner could read through this work without needing to consult additional books or dictionaries.
- to provide footnotes and maps.

This volume contains just book one; a volume of this sort containing all five books would be awkwardly large. Also, I wanted something that students could complete in around a semester.

Approximate statistics regarding the simplified text:

352 unique words, 1131 words total.
Average sentence length: 8.5 words.

Approximate statistics regarding the original text:

1110 unique words, 2900 words total.
Average sentence length: 18.6 words.

This reader edition of the *Vīta Carolī* is not a critical edition of the text; for that, please consult Jaffé's work which is cited in the bibliography. The glosses provided in the footnotes are intentionally woodenly literal; their purpose is to aid the reader in understanding the Latin, not to provide an idiomatic English translation. The glossaries for each page are created by a computer program that consults a dictionary and then are reviewed and emended line-by-line manually. AI tools are not used in the process. Due to the sheer volume of entries in the glossary,

there may be occasional mistakes. If you find one, please consider letting me know at decker49@gmail.com so that I can correct the book.

The Saxon Poet's *Vīta Carolī* is a work of art, a carefully-crafted heroic poem. My simplified version should not be approached as a work of art but rather as a practical tool to give the intermediate student an easy text to prepare them for the original.

Fīnis intrōductiōnis.

Versiō Simplicissima

Francī vīvēbant in Galliā. Erant duo rēgēs Francōrum: Carolus et Carolomannus, frāter eius. In annō 771, Carolomannus mortuus¹ est. Postea Carolus erat rēx omnium Francōrum. Carolus iit ad villam, quae Carbōnāta vocātur. Et illic Carolus suscēpit omnēs procerēs Carolomannī. Omnēs procerēs sē subdidērunt Carolō.

Sed uxor Carolomannī, filiī Carolomannī, et paucī aliī fūgērunt ad Ītaliā. Tunc vīvēbant sub mūnīmine rēgis Dēsīderiī.

Rēx Carolus celebrāvit Nātālem Dominī et Paschālia Fēsta in Attiniācō. Pāpa Paulus mortuus¹ est, et Adriānus suscēpit pontificātum.

Carolus collēgit procerēs ad concilium generāle in Wormaciā. Carolus dīxit: "Volō pugnāre contrā Saxonēs in bellō." Cūr? Quia Saxonēs vīvēbant prope Francōs, et saepe invāsērunt finēs Francōrum.

Erant caedēs, incendia, et praedae prope finēs. Quoque, nātūra Saxonum erat ferōx et Saxonēs colēbant nōn Chrīstum sed daemōnēs.

Saxonēs nōn habēbant ūnum rēgem, sed habēbant multōs ducēs et multōs pāgōs. Ergō Saxonēs nōn potuērunt pugnāre pariter contrā Francōs.

Erant trēs partēs Saxonum: Westfalos in occiduā, Ostvalos in oriente, et Angariī inter Westfalos et Ostvalos.

¹*mortuus est* = he died.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Adriānus: Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795
 aliī: others; singular dative from alius, alia, aliud
 Angariī: the Angarians, a Saxon tribe
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
 at: and
 Attiniācō: likely Attigny in the Ardennes department of modern-day France
 bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, belli
 caedēs: slaughter; plural feminine nominative from caedis, caedis
 Carbōnāta: the name of a villa
 Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolomanni: of Carloman, son of Pepin the Short and co-ruler of the Frankish kingdom with Charlemagne
 Carolomannus: Carloman, son of Pepin the Short and co-ruler of the Frankish kingdom with Charlemagne
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus
 Christum: Christ; singular masculine accusative from Christus, Christi
 colēbant: they were worshiping; 3rd person plural imperfect active from colō, colere, coluī, cultus
 collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus
 concilium: council, assembly; singular neuter accusative from concilium, concili(i)
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cūr: why
 daemōnēs: demons; plural masculine accusative from daemōn, daemōnis
 Dēsideriī: of Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
 dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
 Domini: of the lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus, domini
 ducēs: leaders; plural masculine accusative from dux, ducis
 duo: two
 eius: his/her/its
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 ergō: therefore
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 ferōx: wild, bold, defiant; singular feminine nominative from ferōx, (gen.), ferōcis
 fēsta: Paschālia Fēsta = Easter, festivals; plural neuter accusative from fēstus, fēsta, fēstum
 filiī: sons; plural masculine nominative from filius, fili
 finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis
 Franci: the Franks
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 Francōs: the Franks
 frāter: brother; singular masculine nominative from frāter, frātris
 fūgērunt: they fled; 3rd person plural perfect active from fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitus
 Galliā: Gaul; singular feminine ablative from Gallia, Galliae
 generāle: general; singular neuter accusative from generālis, generālis
 habēbant: they had; 3rd person plural imperfect active from habeo, habere, habui, habitus
 iit: it went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, ire, iī, itus (irregular)
 illic: there
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incendia: fires; plural neuter nominative from incendium, incendii
 inter: between, among, during
 invāsērunt: they invaded; 3rd person plural perfect active from invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus
 Ītaliā: Italy (accusative case)
 mortuus: mortuus est = he died; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from morior, mori, mortuus sum
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 mūnimine: defence, fortification, rampart; singular neuter ablative from mūnimen, mūniminis
 Nātālem: Nātālem Domini = Christmas, birthday; singular common accusative from natalis, natalis, natale
 nātūra: nature; singular feminine nominative from nātūra, nātūrae
 nōn: not
 occiduā: westerly; singular feminine nominative from occiduus, occidua, occiduum
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative or accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 omnium: of all; plural genitive from omnis, omnis, omne
 oriente: daybreak, dawn, East; singular ablative from oriēns, orientis
 Ostvalōs: Eastphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
 pāgōs: district, region; plural masculine accusative from pāgus, pāgi
 pāpa: pope; singular masculine nominative from Pāpa, Pāpae
 pariter: equally, together
 partēs: parts; plural feminine nominative from pars, partis
 Paschālia: Paschālia Fēsta = Easter, Paschal; plural neuter nominative from paschālis, paschālis, paschāle
 pauci: a few, little; plural masculine nominative from paucus, pauci
 Paulus: Pope Paul I; Pope from May 29th 757 to June 28th 767 (ablative case)
 pontificātum: pontificate; singular masculine accusative from pontificātus, pontificātus
 postea: thereafter, later
 potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potui, -
 praedae: plunder; plural feminine nominative from praeda, praedae
 procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine nominative or accusative from procer, proceris
 prope: near, close
 pugnāre: to fight; present active indicative from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 quae: which; singular female nominative of quis
 quia: because
 quoque: also
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgēs: kings; plural masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 saepe: often
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sē: themselves
 sed: but
 sub: below, under
 subdidērunt: they placed under; 3rd person plural perfect active from subdō, subdere, subdidī, subditus
 suscepit: he undertook, he supported; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
 trēs: three; plural common nominative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 tunc: then
 ūnus: one; singular neuter nominative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singuli -ae -a, semel
 uxor: wife; singular feminine nominative from uxor, uxōris
 villam: villa; singular feminine accusative from villa, villae
 vivēbant: they were living; 3rd person plural imperfect active from vivō, vivere, vixī, victus
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 volō: I want; 1st person singular present active from volō, velle, voluī, -
 Westfalōs: Westphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
 Wormaciā: in Worms, a city in Germany; singular feminine ablative from Wormacia, Wormaciae

Carolus statuit sibi¹ subdere gentem Saxonum. Vāstāvit terrās Saxonum lātē cum ferrō et ignī.

Erat castellum, nōmine Ērēsburg. Ērēsburg erat valdē forte. Prope Ērēsburg erat simulācrum quod vocitābant Irminsul. Hoc simulācrum erat columna magna et decōra. Rēx Carolus ēvertit hoc simulācrum.

Carolus mānsit tribus diēbus prope Eresburg, pugnāns contrā Saxonēs. Sed nōn erat aqua. Caelus erat serēnus et nōn habēbat nūbēs (et ergō nōn erat imber). Quoque nōn erat aqua in rīvīs, sed pulvis tantum. Sitis graviter fatīgābat castra Carolī. Sed Deus Omnipotēns fēcit mīrāculum: subitō multa aqua fluit per rīvōs āridōs, et exercitus Carolī tunc habēbat satis aquae. Deus fēcit hoc mīrāculum quia Carolus ēvertit simulācrum. Carolus vēnit ad amnem Wisūram et recēpit obsidēs ā Saxōnibus. Carolus rediit ad patriam cum magnā prōsperitāte.

¹*Charlemagne decided to subdue the people of the Saxons to himself.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
 aqua: water; singular feminine nominative from aqua, aquae
 aquae: of water; singular feminine genitive from aqua, aquae
 aridōs: dry; plural masculine accusative from aridus, arida -um,
 aridior -or -us, aridissimus -a -um
 caelus: heaven, sky; singular masculine nominative from caelus,
 caeli
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter nominative from
 castellum, castellī
 castra: camp(s), forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum,
 castrī
 columna: column; singular feminine nominative from columna,
 columnae
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 decōra: elegance, beauty; singular feminine nominative from
 decus, decoris
 Deus: God; singular masculine nominative from Deus, Dei
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 Ērēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day
 Obermarsberg
 ergō: therefore
 et: and
 ēvertit: he overturned, destroyed; 3rd person singular present
 active from ēvertō, ēvertere, ēverti, ēversus
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 fatigābat: it was wearying; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from fatigo, fatigare, fatigavi, fatigatus
 fēcit: He did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō,
 facere, fēcī, factus
 ferrō: with sword; singular neuter ablative from ferrum, ferrī
 fluit: it flows; 3rd person singular present active from fluō,
 fluere, flūxī, flūxus
 forte: strong; singular neuter nominative from fortis, forte
 gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
 gēns, gentis
 graviter: gravely
 habēbat: he had; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 habēō, habēre, habuī, habitus
 hoc: this; singular neuter nominative or accusative from hic,
 haec, hoc
 ignī: with fire; singular masculine ablative from ignis, ignis
 imber: rain; singular masculine nominative from imber, imbris
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 Irminsul: the name of an idol, or type of idol that the Saxons
 worshipped
 lātē: widely; adverb from lātus, -a, -um
 māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 manēō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 mīrāculum: miracle; singular neuter accusative from mīrāculum,
 mīrāculī
 multa: much; singular feminine nominative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 nūbēs: clouds; plural feminine accusative from nūbēs, nūbis
 obsidēs: hostages; plural masculine accusative from obses,
 obsidis
 omnipotēns: all-powerful; singular masculine nominative from
 omnipotēns, (gen.), omnipotentis
 patriam: fatherland; singular feminine accusative from patria,
 patriae
 per: through
 prope: near, close
 prosperitāte: success, prosperity; singular feminine ablative
 from prosperitās, prosperitātis
 pugnāns: fighting; singular nominative present participle from
 pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 pulvis: dust; singular masculine nominative from pulvis, pulveris
 quia: because
 quoque: also
 quod: which; singular neuter accusative of qui
 recēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus
 rediit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 redeō, redire, rediivī, reditus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 rīvīs: small streams; plural masculine ablative from rīvus, rīvi
 rīvōs: small streams; plural masculine accusative from rīvus, rīvi
 satis: enough
 Saxonēs: the Saxons (nominative or accusative case)
 Saxōnibus: the Saxons (ablative case)
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons (genitive case)
 sed: but
 serēnus: serene; singular masculine nominative from serēnus,
 serēna, serēnum
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of sē
 simulācrum: image, likeness, idol; singular neuter nominative
 from simulācrum, simulācrī
 sitis: thirst; singular feminine nominative from sitis, sitis
 statuit: he decided; 3rd person singular present active from
 statuō, statuere, statui, statutus
 subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō,
 subdere, subdidī, subditus
 subito: suddenly
 tantum: only; (adverb)
 terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
 terni -ae -a, ter
 tunc: then
 valdē: very
 vāstāvit: he ravaged, devastated; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēnī, ventus
 vocitābant: they called; 3rd person plural imperfect active from
 vocitō, vocitāre, vocitāvī, vocitātus
 Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany

Pāpa Adriānus mīsit lēgātōs ad rēgem Carolum. Adriānus dēposcit auxilium Carolī magnī contrā Langobardōs¹. In illō tempore Dēsīderius erat rēx Langobardōrum. Sed lēgātī Adriānī nōn potuērunt ambulāre ad terrās Francōrum quia terra Langōbardorum erat inter Rōmam et terrās Francōrum. Ergo, lēgātus nōmine Petrus cōnscendit nāvem et petiit Massiliam per longō circuitū mare. Deinde post longum iter terrēnum, Petrus adīvit in villā Theodōne vocātā. Petrus dēposcit auxilium Carolī, et Carolus dēcrēvit dēfendere Rōmānōs.

Atque Carolus collēgit agmen et pervēnit in urbem Genuam. Carolus dēcrēvit dīvisit agmen suum et invādere Langōbardōs cum geminō bellō. Ūna pars iit per montem Iovis cum duce Bernhardō. Alia pars iit per Cīnisiū. Duplex exercitus irruerat arva Ītalīae, lātē vastāns rēgnum opulentum.

¹(Pope) Adrian requested the help of Charlemagne against the Lombards. The Lombard kingdom was just north of Rome, so the Pope wanted the Frankish Kingdom to protect him against Lombard dominance.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
adivit: he approached, visited; 3rd person singular perfect active from adeō, adire, adivī(ū), aditus
Adriāni: of Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795
Adriānus: Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795
agmen: marching army; singular neuter accusative from agmen, agminis
alia: other; singular feminine nominative from alius, alia, aliud
ambulāre: to walk; present active infinitive from ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvi, ambulātus
arva: fields, countryside; plural neuter accusative from arvum, arvi
atque: and
auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from auxilium, auxilii
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, belli
Bernhardō: Bernard, son of Charles Martel and uncle of Charlemagne
Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
Cīnisiū: probably a city or region in the Lombard Kingdom, perhaps the city of Cassino
circuitū: path, circuit, outer shore; singular neuter ablative from circuitus, circuitus
collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus
cōscendit: he got in, climbed up, mounted; 3rd person singular present active from cōscendō, cōscendere, cōscendi, cōscēnsus
contrā: against, away from, facing
cum: with
dēcrēvit: he decided; 3rd person singular perfect active from dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus
dēfendere: to defend; present active infinitive from dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēnsus
deinde: after
dēposcit: he asked for, requested, demanded; 3rd person singular present active from dēpōscō, dēpōscere, dēpōscī, -
Dēsiderius: King Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
dīvīsī: he divided; 3rd person singular perfect active from dividō, dividere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus
duce: leader; singular masculine ablative from dux, ducis
duplex: two-fold, double; singular nominative from duplex, (gen.), duplicis
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
ergō: therefore
et: and
exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitūs
Francōrum: of the Franks
geminō: two-fold, double; singular masculine ablative from geminus, gemina, geminum
Genuam: Genua, modern-day Genoa, Italy
iit: it went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, ire, iī, itus (irregular)
illō: these; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inter: between, among, during
invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus
Iovis: Jovis, Jupiter
irruerat: it had forced its way in; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from irruō, irruere, irruī, irrutus
Ītalīae: Italy (genitive or locative case)
iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from iter, itineris
Langōbardōrum: of the Lombards
Langōbardōs: the Lombards
lātē: widely; adverb from lātus, -a, -um
lēgātī: legates, ambassadors; plural masculine nominative from lēgātus, lēgātī
lēgātōs: legate, ambassador; plural masculine accusative from lēgātus, lēgātī
lēgātus: legate, ambassador; singular masculine nominative from lēgātus, lēgātī
longō: long, far; singular masculine ablative from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
longum: long, far; singular neuter accusative from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
māgnī: great; singular masculine genitive from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
Massiliam: Marseille, a city in southern France
mīsīt: he sent; 3rd person singular perfect active from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
montem: mountain; singular masculine accusative from mōns, montis
nāvem: boat; singular feminine accusative from nāvis, nāvis
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
opulentum: rich; singular masculine accusative from opulentus -a -um
pāpa: pope; singular masculine nominative from Pāpa, Pāpae
pars: part; singular feminine nominative from pars, partis
per: through
pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular present active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
petiit: he asked for; 3rd person singular perfect active from petō, petere, petīvī, petītus
Petrus: Peter; singular masculine nominative from Petrus, Petri
post: behind, after, since
potuerunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
quia: because
rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
rēgnū: kingdom; singular neuter accusative from rēgnū, rēgni
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
Rōmam: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
Rōmānōs: Romans; plural masculine accusative from romanus, romana, romanum
sed: but
suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
terra: land; singular feminine nominative from terra, terrae
terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
terrēnum: land, ground; singular neuter accusative from terrenus, terrena, terrenum
Theodōne: the name of a villa that Charlemagne was in
ūna: one; singular feminine nominative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
vāstāns: ravaging, devastating; singular nominative present participle from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus
villā: farm, villa; singular feminine ablative from villa, villae
vocāta: having been called; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Dēsīderius fugāvit in urbem Tīcīnum. Exercitus Carōlī iit ad Tīcīnum et temptāvit irrumpere mūrōs urbis, sed nōn poterat. Carolus iit ad Rōmam et ōrāvit. Ad Tīcīnum rediit. Urbs erat fessa repugnandī¹, et populus urbis dedit urbem Carōlō. Tunc Dēsīderius erat captīvus. Fīlius illius, nōmine Adalgis, fugāvit ad Cōstantīnum. Cōstantīnus recēpit eum. Adalgis permānsit in honōre cum Cōstantīnum usque ad ultima vītae.

Intereā, Saxonēs ausī sunt invādere finēs Francōrum. Saxonēs pugnābant contrā pāgum, nōmine Hassī. Cūr invasērunt Saxonēs? Quia Rēx Carolus nōn adfuit. Saxonēs iērunt ad locum, nōmine Frīdēshlar, et trādidērunt multās rēs ā flammīs. Saxonēs quoque voluērunt trādere flammīs ecclēsiam quam Sāctus Bonifācius sacrāverat Chrīstō. (Ōlim, Sāctus Bonifācius ēvertit simulācrum, arborem nōmine "Donar's Oak".) Sed Saxonēs nōn potuērunt trādere flammīs hanc ecclēsiam, quia ingēns terror dīvinitus invāsit eōs et Saxonēs fūgērunt.

¹*fessa repugnandī* = tired of fighting

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adfuit: he is present; 3rd person singular present active from
 adsum, adesse, adfui, adfuturus
 Adalgis: Adalgis, son of Desiderius
 arborem: tree; singular feminine accusative from arbor, arboris
 ausi: ausi sunt = they dared; plural masculine nominative
 perfect passive participle from audeō, audēre, ausum
 Bonifacius: Saint Boniface, AD 675-754
 captivus: captive; singular masculine nominative from captivus,
 captiva, captivum
 Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 Christō: Christ
 Cōstantinum: Constantine V, Emperor of the Byzantine Empire
 from 741 to 775; singular masculine accusative from
 Cōstantinus, Cōstantini
 Cōstantinus: Constantine V, Emperor of the Byzantine Empire
 from 741 to 775; singular masculine nominative from
 Cōstantinus, Cōstantini
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 cūr: why
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare,
 dedi, datus
 Dēsiderius: King Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-
 786)
 dīvinitus: divinely, of heaven (adverb)
 ecclēsiā: church; singular feminine accusative from ecclēsia,
 ecclēsiāe
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futurus
 et: and
 eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 ēvertit: he overturned, destroyed; 3rd person singular present
 active from ēvertō, ēvertere, ēverti, ēversus
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 fessa: tired; singular feminine nominative from fessus, fessa,
 fessum
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from
 finis, finis
 flammīs: flames; plural feminine dative or ablative from flamma,
 flammae
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 Frīdēshlar: Fritzlar, Germany
 fugāvit: he routed, chased away; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from fugō, fugāre, fugāvi, fugātus
 fūgērunt: they fled; 3rd person plural perfect active from fugiō,
 fugere, fugi, fugitus
 hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 Hassi: Hesse, a region in Germany
 honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōris
 iērunt: they went; 3rd person plural perfect active from eō, ire,
 iī, itus
 iit: it went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, ire, iī,
 itus
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ingēns: huge, enormous; singular nominative from ingēns,
 ingentis (gen.), ingentior -or -us, ingentissimus -a -um
 interea: during
 invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from invādō,
 invādere, invāsi, invāsus
 invāsērunt: they invaded; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus
 invāsit: he invaded; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus
 irrumpere: to invade, penetrate; present active infinitive from
 irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpi, irruptus
 locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, loci
 multās: many; plural feminine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 mūrōs: city walls; plural masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 ōlim: one day, once upon a time
 ōrāvit: he prayed; 3rd person singular perfect active from ōrō,
 ōrāre, ōrāvi, ōrātus
 pāgum: district, region; singular masculine accusative from
 pāgus, pāgi
 permansit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 permanēō, permanēre, permansi, permansus
 populus: people, populace; singular masculine nominative from
 populus, populi
 poterat: he was able to; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from possum, posse, potui, -
 potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from possum, posse, potui, -
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātus
 quam: which; singular feminine accusative from qui
 quia: because
 quoque: also
 recēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus
 rediit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 redeō, redire, rediui(ii), reditus
 repūgnandi: of fighting back; singular masculine genitive future
 passive participle from repūgnō, repūgnāre, repūgnāvi,
 repūgnātus
 rēs: things; plural feminine accusative from rēs, rei
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Rōmam: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
 sacrāverat: he had consecrated; 3rd person singular pluperfect
 active from sacrō, sacrāre, sacrāvi, sacrātus
 sānctus: holy, saint
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 sed: but
 simulācrum: image, likeness; singular neuter nominative from
 simulācrum, simulācri
 temptāvit: he tried; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 temptō, temptāre, temptāvi, temptātus
 terror: terror; singular masculine nominative from terror,
 terrōris
 Ticinum: Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the
 Lombards from 572 to 774.
 trādere: to hand over; present active infinitive from trādō,
 trādere, trādidī, trāditus
 trādidērunt: they had handed over; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus
 tunc: then
 ultima: last (parts of life); plural neuter accusative from -, -,
 ulterior -or -us, ultimus -a -um
 urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
 urbs: city; singular feminine nominative from urbs, urbis
 ūsque: until, all the way, up until
 vitae: of life; singular feminine genitive from vita, vitae
 voluērunt: they wanted; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 volō, velle, volui, -

Rēx dūxit tempus hiemis in villā nōmine Carisiacō. Carolus convocāvit omnēs procerēs ad cōsiliū. Et dīxit: "Saxonēs colunt daemonēs, et nōn colunt Chrīstum. Saxonēs nōn volunt vīvere in pāce, sed saepe volunt invādere finēs Francōrum. Ergō, dēbēmus pugnāre in bellō contrā Saxonēs et dēbēmus ēvertere simulacra eōrum." Carolus trānsīvit flūmen Rhēnum cum agmine suō et pugnāvit contrā castellum in Sigiburg. Tunc petiit Eresburg. Saxonēs dēstrūxerant castellum in Eresburg, ergō Carolus mūnīvit rūrsus. Tunc Carolus pervēnit ad amnem Wisūram. Erat turba magna prope amnem. Turba voluit obsistere agminī Carōlī. Sed turba fūgit in certāmine. Carolus prōstrāverat innumerōs dē turbā.

Inde Carolus iit in regiōnēs Osterliudī. Vir, nōmine Hessī, occurrit Carolō. Hessī voluit facere pācem inter gentem suam et Carolum. Ergō Ostvalos spospondērunt iūrāmenta et dedērunt obsidēs Carōlō, et erat pāx.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
agmine: army; singular neuter ablative from agmen, agminis
agmini: to the army; singular neuter dative from agmen, agminis
amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, belli
Cārsiācō: the name of a villa
Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (genitive case)
Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (dative case)
Carolum: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (accusative case)
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (nominative case)
castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter accusative from castellum, castelli
certāmine: fight, contest, struggle; singular neuter ablative from certāmen, certāminis
Christum: Christ; singular masculine accusative from Christus, Christi
colunt: they worship; 3rd person plural present active from colō, colere, colui, cultus
cōsiliū: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from consilium, consilii
contrā: against
convocāvit: he called together, assembled; 3rd person singular perfect active from convocō, convocāre, convocāvi, convocātus
cum: with
daemōnēs: demons; plural masculine accusative from daemōn, daemōnis
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dēbēmus: we should, we ought; 1st person plural present active from dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitus
dedērunt: they gave; 3rd person plural perfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus
dēstrūxerant: they had destroyed; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from dēstruō, dēstruere, dēstruxi, dēstrūctus
dixit: he said; 3rd person singular perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
dūxit: he spent; 3rd person singular perfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus
eōrum: their; plural neuter genitive
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futurus
Ērēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day Obermarsberg
ergō: therefore
et: and
ēvertēre: to overturn, destroy; present active infinitive from ēvertō, ēvertēre, ēverti, ēversus
facere: to make, to do; present active infinitive from faciō, facere, feci, factus
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis
flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
Francōrum: of the Franks
fugit: he fled; 3rd person singular perfect active from fugiō, fugere, fugi, fugitus
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from gens, gentis
Hessi: the name of a man sent to Charlemagne to negotiate peace
hiemis: of winter; singular feminine genitive from hiemps, hiemis
iit: it went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, ire, iī, itus (irregular)
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inde: from there, since
innumerōs: countless; plural masculine accusative from innumerus, innumera, innumerus
inter: between, among, during
invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus
iūrāmenta: oaths; plural neuter accusative from iūrāmentum, iūrāmenti
māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
mūnivit: he fortified; 3rd person singular perfect active from mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūnitus
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
obsidēs: hostages; plural masculine accusative from obses, obsidis
obsistere: to oppose, resist, withstand; present active infinitive from obsistō, obsistere, obstiti, obstitus
occurrit: he ran; 3rd person singular perfect from occurro, occurrere, occurri, occursus
omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
Osterliudi: another name of the Eastphalians
Ostvalōs: Eastphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
pāce: peace; singular feminine ablative from pāx, pācis
pācem: peace; singular feminine accusative from pāx, pācis
pāx: peace; singular feminine nominative from pāx, pācis
pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
petiit: he sought; 3rd person singular perfect active from petō, petere, petivi, petitus
procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine accusative from procer, proceris
prope: near, close
prostrāverat: he had struck down; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from prosternō, prosternere, prostrāvi, prostrātus
pugnāre: to fight; present active infinitive from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātus
pugnāvit: he fought; 3rd person singular perfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvi, pugnātus
regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
Rhēnum: the Rhine; singular masculine accusative from Rhēnus, Rhēni
rūrsus: again
saepe: often
Saxonēs: the Saxons
sed: but
Sigiburg: A Saxon hillfort in Western Germany
simulācra: images, likenesses; plural neuter accusative from simulācrum, simulācrī
suam: his; singular feminine acc. from suus
suō: his; singular dative or ablative of suus
tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus, temporis
transivit: he crossed; 3rd person singular perfect active from transeō, trānsire, trānsivi, trānsitus
tunc: then
turba: crowd; singular feminine nominative from turba, turbae
spondērunt: they promised; 3rd person plural perfect from spondeō, spondere, sponendi, spōnsum
villā: villa; singular feminine ablative from villa, villae
vir: man; singular masculine nominative from vir, viri
vivere: to live; present active infinitive from vivō, vivere, vixi, vīctus
voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō, velle, volui, -
volunt: they want; plural 3rd person present from volō, velle, volui (irr.)
Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany

Carolus posuit partem exercituum iuxtā amnem Wisuram. Hī mīlitēs erat sēcūrī et nōn habēbant cautēlam. Ergō Saxonēs fēcērunt fraudem: quīdam mīlitēs Francōrum ferēbant pābula equīs ad castra, et agmen Saxonum permiscuit cum Francīs. Saxonēs finxērunt esse amīcōs et quoque ferēbunt pābula. Itaque Saxonēs intrāvērunt castrum Francōrum. Dum Francī dormiēbant, Saxonēs fēcērunt caedem magnam et necāvērunt multōs Francōs. Tunc Francī nōn dormiēbant, et coepērunt pugnāre contrā Saxonēs. Saxonēs fugāvērunt ā castrīs. Posteā Carolus vēnit ad castrum et pugnābat contrā Saxonēs, necāvit multōs, et rediit ad terrās Francōrum.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 agmen: marching army; singular neuter nominative from
 agmen, agminis
 amicōs: friends; plural masculine accusative from amicus, amica
 -um, amicior -or -us, amicissimus -a -um
 amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
 caedem: slaughter; singular feminine accusative from caedēs,
 caedis
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 castra: forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
 castrīs: forts; plural neuter ablative from castrum, castrī
 castrum: fort; singular neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
 cautēlam: caution; singular feminine accusative from cautēla,
 cautēlae
 coepērunt: they started; from coepī, coepisse, coepī, coeptum
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 cum: with
 dormiēbant: they were sleeping; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from dormiō, dormire, dormīvī, dormītus
 dum: while, as long as, until
 equīs: for the horses; plural masculine ablative from equus, equī
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 ergō: therefore
 esse: to be
 et: and
 exercituum: of armies; plural masculine genitive from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 fēcērunt: they did, they made; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 ferēbant: they were bringing, bearing; 3rd person plural
 imperfect active from ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
 finxērunt: they feigned, pretended; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from fingō, fingere, finxī, fictus
 Franci: the Franks
 Francis: the Franks
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 Francōs: the Franks
 fraudem: fraud; singular feminine accusative from fraus, fraudis
 fugāvērunt: they routed, chased away; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus
 habēbant: they had; 3rd person plural imperfect active from
 habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus
 hī: to these; plural masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 intrāvērunt: they entered; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus
 itaque: so then, therefore
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 māgnam: large; singular feminine accusative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, mājor -or -us, maximus -a -um
 milites: soldiers; plural masculine nominative from miles, militis
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 necāvērunt: they killed, destroyed; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 necāvit: he killed, destroyed; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 nōn: not
 pābula: fodder, food, nourishment; plural neuter nominative
 from pābulum, pābuli
 partem: part; singular feminine accusative from pars, partis
 permiscuit: he mixed together; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from permisceo, permiscere, permiscui, permixtus
 posteā: thereafter, later
 posuit: he put; 3rd person singular perfect active from pōnō,
 pōnere, posuī, positus
 pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 pugnāre: to fight; present active infinitive from pugnō, pugnāre,
 pugnāvī, pugnātus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quī
 quīdam: certain; plural masculine nominative from quīdam
 quoque: also
 rediit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 redeō, redire, redivī(ii), reditus
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sēcūrī: untroubled, carefree; plural masculine nominative from
 sēcūrus, sēcūra, sēcūrum
 terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 tunc: then
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēnī, ventus
 Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany

Carolus audīvit quod in Ītaliā erat tirannum nōmine Hrodgaudum. Hrodgaūdum erat ducem Foroiulensibus sub Rēge Carolō, sed rebellāvit contrā Carolum. Hrodgaudum voluit sibi subdere tōtam Ītaliā. Ergō Carolus iussit agmen suum trānsīre iuga Alpīnārum. Tunc Carolus interfēcit Hrodgaudum.

Carolus revertit ad terrās Francōrum. Erat rebelliō Saxonum. Saxonēs pugnābant contrā castrum Sigiburg, sed nōn potuērunt id vincere. Carolus conventum prōcērum fēcit in urbe Wormaciā et collēgit agmen. Exercitus pugnāvit fortiter contrā Saxonēs et fēcit caedem magnam. Carolus vēnit ad fontēs amnis Lyppiae et invēnit catervam Saxonum. Hominēs in catervā dīxērunt: "Ō Rēx, īgnōsce scelera nostra. Volumus crēdere in Chrīstō!" Ergō Carolus nōn pugnābat contrā istōs Saxonēs et multī hominēs suscēpērunt baptismum.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
agmen: marching army; singular neuter accusative from agmen, agminis
Alpīnārum: Alpine; plural feminine genitive from Alpīnus, Alpīna, Alpīnum
amnis: river; singular masculine genitive from amnis, amnis
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
audivit: he heard; 3rd person singular perfect active from audire, audire, audivī, auditus
baptismum: baptism; singular neuter accusative from baptismum, baptismi
caedem: slaughter; singular feminine accusative from caedēs, caedis
Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
Carolū: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
castrum: fort; singular neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
caterva: crowd; singular feminine nominative from caterva, catervae
catervam: crowd; singular feminine accusative from caterva, catervae
Christō: Christ
collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus
contrā: against
conventum: meeting, convention; singular masculine accusative from conventus, conventus
crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus
dixerunt: they said; 3rd person plural perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
ducem: leader; singular masculine accusative from dux, ducis
erat: there was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
ergō: therefore
et: and
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitus
fēcit: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
fontēs: fountains, headwaters; plural masculine accusative from fōns, fontis
Forōiulēnsibus: with those living in Friuli, a historical region of northeast Italy
fortiter: strongly (adverb from fortis, forte)
Francōrum: of the Franks
hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative or accusative from homō, hominis
Hrodgaudum: Hrodgaud (or Rodgand), Duke of Friuli from 774 to 776.
id: it (the castle); singular neuter accusative from is, ea, id
ignōsce: forgive!; 2nd person singular present active imperative from ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
interfēcit: he killed; 3rd person singular perfect active from interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus
invēnit: he found; 3rd person singular present active from invenio, invenire, invēnī, inventus
istōs: those; plural masculine accusative from iste, ista, istud
Italiā: Italy; singular feminine ablative from Italia, Italiae
Italiam: Italy (accusative case)
iuga: mountain peaks; plural neuter accusative from jugum, jugi
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus
Lyppia: of the Lippe, a river in modern-day Rhine-Westphalia, Germany
māgnam: large; singular feminine accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
multī: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
nostra: our; singular feminine nominative from noster, nostra, nostrum
potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
procerum: of noblemen; plural masculine genitive from procer, proceris
pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
pugnāvit: he fought; 3rd person singular perfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
rebellāvit: he rebelled; 3rd person singular perfect active from rebellō, rebellāre, rebellāvī, rebellātus
rebelliō: renewal of war, rebellion; singular feminine nominative from rebellio, rebellio
rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
revertit: he returned; 3rd person singular present active from revertō, revertere, revertī, reversus
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
Saxonēs: the Saxons
Saxōnum: of the Saxons
scelera: crimes; plural neuter accusative from scelus, sceleris
sed: but
sibi: to himself; singular dative of sē
Sigiburg: A Saxon hillfort in Western Germany
sub: below, under
subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdidī, subditus
suscēperunt: they undertook; 3rd person plural perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
suum: his; singular neuter accusative from suus, sui
terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
tōtam: whole, total; singular feminine accusative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
trānsire: to go over, to cross; present active infinitive from transeō, trānsire, trānsivī, trānsitus
tunc: then
tirannum: tyrant; singular masculine nominative variant spelling from tyrannus, tyrannī
urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
venit: he came; 3rd person singular perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
vincere: to conquer; present active infinitive from vincō, vincere, vicī, victus
voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō, velle, voluī, -
volumus: we want; 1st person plural present active from volō, velle, voluī, -
Wormaciā: Worms; singular feminine nominative from Wormacia, Wormaciae

Carolus vēnit ad Noviomagum et celebrāvit ibi sollempnia Paschae. Tunc convocāvit cōsiliū generāle in urbe nōmine Pathalbrunnōn. Omnēs procerēs adfuērunt, sed ūnus, nōmine Widokindus, fēcerat scelerum et fūgerat ad Sīfrīdum, quī erat rēx Dānōrum. Quoque in urbe erant multī hominēs quī dīcēbant "Volumus crēdere Chrīstō" et suscēpērunt baptismum.

Tunc Sarrācēnūs quīdam pervēnerat illūc, nōmine Ībinalārbī. Ībinalārbī erat dux in Hispāniā, sed metuit rēx Sarrācēnūs. Ergō Ibinalarbī volēbat sē subdere Carolō et dare urbēs suās Carolō.

Itaque Carolus dūxit agmina per iuga Pyrenēi. Vēnit in rēgnum Navarrōrum et accēpit urbēs et obsidēs. Carolus dēiēcera mūrōs urbis, nōmine Pompelōnem, ad terram, nē fieret¹ rebellīs. Sed virī in urbe erant valdē īrātī. Itaque sē occultābant in iuga Pyrenēi. Quandō exercitus Carolī trānsībat per saltūs, subitō virī pugnābant contrā Francōs, necāvērunt multōs hominēs, cēpērunt praedam, et fugāvērunt iterum in montēs.

Quoque in orientālī, Saxonēs iterum pugnābant contrā Francōs et necāverunt multōs virōs, fēminās, et liberōs, et trādiderunt ecclēsiās flammīs. Carolus revertit ab Hispāniā, iit ad terrās Saxonum, et necāvit tōtam exercitum Saxonum.

¹*So that rebellion might not occur.*

ab: from, out of, by, since
 accēpi: he received, he grasped; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adfuērunt: they were present; 3rd person plural perfect active from adsum, adessee, adfui, adfuturus
 agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from agmen, agminis
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
 baptismum: baptism; singular neuter accusative from baptismum, baptismi
 Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus
 cēpērunt: they took; 3rd person plural perfect active from capio, capere, cēpi, captus
 Christō: Christ
 cōsiliū: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from consilium, consili(i)
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 convocāvit: he called together, assembled; 3rd person singular perfect active from convoco, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus
 crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus
 Dānōrum: Dane; plural masculine genitive from Dānus, Dānī
 dare: to give; present active infinitive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 dēicērat: he had thrown down, overthrew; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from deicio, deicere, dejeci, dejectus
 dicēbant: they were saying; 3rd person plural imperfect active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 dux: leader; singular masculine nominative from dux, ducis
 dūxit: he lead; 3rd person singular perfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus
 ecclēsiās: churches; plural feminine accusative from ecclēsia, ecclēsiāe
 erant: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 ergō: therefore
 et: and
 exercitum: army; singular masculine accusative from exercitus, exercitūs
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitūs
 fēcerat: he had done; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from facio, facere, fēcī, factus
 fēminās: women, wives; pl. f. acc. from fēmina, fēminae
 fieret: it happened; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from fiō, fierī, factus sum
 flammis: flames; plural feminine ablative from flamma, flammāe
 Francōs: the Franks
 fugāvērunt: they routed, chased away; 3rd person plural perfect active from fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus
 fūgerat: he fled; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from fugio, fugere, fūgī, fugitus
 generāle: general; singular neuter accusative from generālis, generālis, generāle
 Hispaniā: Hispania; singular feminine ablative from Hispania, Hispaniae
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō, hominis
 ibi: there, then
 Ibinalarbī: Sulayman ibn Yaqzan al-Kalbi al-Arabi, a muslim governor of Barcelona and Girona
 illūc: over there
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 irātī: angry; plural masculine nominative from irātus -a -um itaque: so then, therefore
 iterum: again
 iuga: mountain peaks; plural neuter accusative from iugum, iugī
 iit: he went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, ire, iī, itus (irregular)
 liberōs: children; plural masculine accusative from liber, liberi
 metuit: he feared; 3rd person singular present active from metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtus
 montēs: mountains; plural masculine accusative from mōns, montis
 multi: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 mūrōs: city walls; plural masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī
 Navarrōrum: of the Kingdom of Navarre, a Basque kingdom
 nē: not
 necāvērunt: they killed, destroyed; 3rd person plural perfect active from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 necāvit: he killed, destroyed; 3rd person singular perfect active from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 Nōviomāgum: city of the Treveri, now Nijmegen, city in Holland; singular feminine accusative from Nōviomāgus, Nōviomāgī
 obsidēs: hostages; plural masculinei accusative obses, obsidis
 occultābant: they were hiding; 3rd person plural imperfect active from occultō, occultāre, occultāvī, occultātus
 omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
 orientāli: eastern; singular ablative from orientālis, orientālis, orientāle
 Paschae: Passover, Easter; singular feminine genitive from Pascha, Paschae
 Pāthalbrunnon: Aachen, a city in modern-day North Rhine-Westphalia
 per: through
 pervēnerat: he had arrived; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 Pompēlonem: Pamplona, a Spanish city
 praedam: plunder; singular feminine accusative from praeda, praedae
 procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine nominative from procer, proceris
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 Pyrēnei: of the Pyrene mountains
 quādo: when, because
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quīdam: certain; singular masculine nominative from quīdam
 quoque: also
 rebellis: rebellion; singular common nominative from rebellis, rebellis, rebelle
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter accusative from rēgnū, rēgni
 revertit: he returned; 3rd person singular present active from revertō, revertere, reverti, reversus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 saltūs: narrow passes, mountain defiles; plural masculine accusative from saltus, saltūs
 Sarracēnūs: a muslim
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 scelerum: of crimes; plural neuter genitive from scelus, sceleris
 sē: himself
 sed: but
 Sifrīdum: Sifrīdus, king of the Danes
 sollempnia: solemnities; plural neuter accusative from sollempnis, sollempne, sollempnior -or -us, sollempnissimus -a -um
 suās: his; plural accusative feminine of suus
 subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdidī, subditus
 subitō: suddenly
 suscēpērunt: they undertook; 3rd person plural perfect from suscipio, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus
 terram: land; singular feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 tōtam: whole, total; singular feminine accusative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 trādidērunt: they had handed over; 3rd person plural perfect active from trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus
 trānsibat: he was going over, he was crossing; 3rd person singular imperfect active from trānseo, trānsire, trānsī, trānsitus
 tunc: then
 ūnus: one
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
 urbēs: cities; plural feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
 valdē: very
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus
 viri: man; plural neuter nominative from virus, viri
 virōs: men; plural masculine accusative from vir, viri
 volēbat: he was wanting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from volō, velle, voluī, -
 volumus: we want; 1st person plural present active from volō, velle, voluī, -
 Widokindus: a Saxon, likely a senator, who fled from Charlemagne, seeking refuge in the court of Sifrīdus

Annō 779

Dux Spōlētānus, nōmine Hildibrandus, iit ad Carolum et dedit Carolō multa dōna.

Carolus iterum pugnābat contrā Saxonēs. Saxonēs pugnābant prope Rhēnum, sed nōn potuērunt vincere exercitum Carolī.

Annō 780

Carolus vēnit ad flūmen Ovaccrum, et ibi invēnit magnam turbam Saxonum quī voluērunt crēdere Chrīstō. Et multī hominēs Saxonum suscēpērunt baptismam.

Posteā, Carolus iit ad Rōmam et ōrāvit. Pervēnit ad Ticinēsem, et ibi celebrāvit Nātālem Dominī.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (genitive case)
 Carolō: to Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (dative case)
 Carolum: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (accusative case)
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (nominative case)
 celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus
 Christō: Christ
 contrā: against, away from, facing
 crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from crēdō,
 crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare,
 dedī, datus
 Domini: of the Lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus,
 domini
 dōna: gifts; plural neuter accusative from dōnum, dōnī
 dux: leader; singular masculine nominative from dux, ducis
 et: and
 exercitum: army; singular masculine accusative from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
 Hildibrandus: Hildebrand, Duke of Spoleto from 774 to 789
 hominēs: persons; plural masculine nominative from homō,
 hominis
 ibi: there, then
 invēnit: he found; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 invenio, invenire, inveni, inventus
 iterum: again
 iit: he went; 3rd person singular perfect active from eō, ire, iī,
 itus (irregular)
 māgnam: large; singular feminine accusative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 multa: many; plural neuter accusative from multus, multa -um,
 -, plūrimus -a -um
 multi: many; plural masculine nominative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 Nātālem: Nātālem Domini = Christmas; singular common
 accusative from natalis, natalis, natale
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 ōrāvit: he prayed; 3rd person singular perfect active from ōrō,
 ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus
 Ovaccrum: probably the Oker River, a tributary of the River
 Aller, in Lower Saxony
 pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 postea: thereafter, later
 potuērunt: they were able to; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from possum, posse, potuī, -
 prope: near, close
 pugnābant: they were fighting; 3rd person plural imperfect
 active from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 pugnābat: he was fighting; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 Rhēnum: the Rhine; singular masculine accusative from Rhēnus,
 Rhēnī
 Rōmam: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sed: but
 Spōlētānus: of the Duchy of Spoleto, located in the region of
 Umbria, Italy
 suscepērunt: they undertook; 3rd person plural perfect active
 from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
 Ticinēsem: Ticino, one of the cantons (regions) of Switzerland
 turbam: crowd; singular feminine accusative from turba, turbae
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular perfect active from veniō,
 venire, vēnī, ventus
 vincere: to conquer; present active infinitive from vincō,
 vincere, vici, victus
 voluērunt: they wanted; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 volō, velle, voluī, -

Versiō Orīginālis

Salvātor mundi, postquam dē Virgine nāscī¹
Dignātus, nostrī sē corporis induit artūs,
Ēvolvit septingentōs rota temporis annōs
Et deciēs septem, sed et ūnus pēne² perāctus
Īnsuper annus erat, cum iūre monarchia rēgnī
Francōrum Carolō dīvīnitus³ est data Magnō.
Nam Carolōmannus frāter dēcesserat⁴ eius
Presentis iam suprēmīs prope partibus annī.

¹*The Savior of the world, after having deigned to be born of the Virgin, dressed himself in the bodily nature of our flesh; the wheel of time turned 700 years.* This refers to Jesus Christ being born of the Virgin Mary. *Dignātus* is an active participle because it comes from the deponent verb *dīgnor*. This first phrase acts as a nominative absolute, a construction found in Medieval Latin that is similar to an ablative absolute. The wheel of time is a poetic construction used to convey the passing of time since the Incarnation; see next footnote.

²*And ten time seven, and one year almost carried out.* The date thus given is, using a date of 1 AD for the birth of Christ, late 771 AD.

³*Furthermore, it was the year when, by divine right, the monarchy of the kingdom of the Franks was given to Charles the Great.* An English-like order might be *cum, dīvīnitus iūre, monarchia rēgnī Francōrum data est Carolō Magnō*. *dīvīnitus* is an adverb, so it would be literally *by right divinely*. I chose to capitalize *Magnō* since it is a common epithet for Charlemagne.

⁴*For Carloman his brother had died now, near the late parts of the present year.* Carloman died on December 4, 771.

annī: year; singular masculine genitive from annus, annī
 annōs: years; plural masculine accusative from annus, annī
 annus: year; singular masculine nominative from annus, annī
 artūs: bodily nature (in context), sinews, limbs, strengths; plural
 masculine accusative from artus, artūs
 Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (dative case)
 Carolōmannus: Carloman, son of Pepin the Short and co-ruler of
 the Frankish kingdom with Charlemagne
 corporis: body, flesh; singular neuter genitive from corpus,
 corporis
 cum: when
 data: data est = was given; singular feminine nominative
 perfect passive participle from dō, dare, dedi, datus
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēcesserat: he had died; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from dēcēdō, dēcēdere, dēcessi, dēcessus
 deciēs: ten times
 dignatus: dignatus est = he had deemed worthy, deigned, the
 est is omitted for metrical reasons; singular masculine
 nominative active perfect passive participle from dignor,
 dignārī, dignātus
 divinitus: divinely, of heaven (adverb)
 eius: his/her/its
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fui, futūrus
 et: and
 ēvolvit: it rolled out, unrolled; 3rd person singular present
 active from ēvolvō, ēvolvere, ēvolvī, ēvolūtus
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 frāter: brother; singular masculine nominative from frāter,
 frātris
 iam: already, now, soon
 induit: he dressed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 induō, induere, induī, indūtus
 īnsuper: besides, furthermore
 iūre: by right; singular neuter ablative from iūs, iūris
 Māgnō: great; singular masculine dative from māgnus, māgna
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 monarchia: monarchy; singular feminine nominative from
 monarchia, monarchiae
 mundi: world; singular masculine genitive from mundus, mundi
 nam: yes, truly
 nāsci: to be born; present passive infinitive
 nostrī: our; singular neuter genitive of noster
 partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from pars, partis
 pēne: almost; alternate spelling of paene
 perāctus: perāctus erat = had been carried out; singular
 masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 peragō, peragere, perēgī, perāctus
 postquam: after
 presentis: present, at-hand, currently-mentioned; singular
 masculine genitive variant spelling from praesēns
 prope: near, close
 rēgnī: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnum,
 rēgni
 rota: wheel; singular feminine nominative from rota, rotae
 salvātor: savior; singular masculine nominative from salvātor,
 salvātōris
 sē: himself
 sed: but
 septem: seven
 septingentōs: 700
 suprēmīs: furthest, latest; plural ablative from superus, supera
 -um, superior -or -us, suprēmus -a -um
 temporis: of time, of periods; singular neuter genitive from
 tempus, temporis
 ūnus: one
 virgine: virgin; singular feminine ablative from virgō, virginis

Et Carolus villam, quae Carbōnāta vocātur,
Adveniēns, summōs procerēs omnēsque potentēs
Frāternae quondam¹ partīs suscēperat illic,
Haud retractantēs² dominō sē subdere tālī;
Exceptīs tantum paucīs, quōs³ forte priōris
Magnus amor dominī cum coniuge fēcerat eius
Et nātīs remanēre, quibus comitāta petīvit
Ītaliā, spērāns sē dēgere posse quiētā
Sub rēgis Dēsīderiī mūnīmine vītā.

¹And Charlemagne, coming to the villa called Carbōnāta, had received there all the noblemen and powerful (men) formerly of his brother's party. After Carloman died, Charlemagne met with Carloman's nobles to bring them to his side; however, a few with Carloman's wife and daughters fled to Italy under King Desiderius, the final Lombard King.

²For metrical reasons, the first syllable of *retractantēs* must be long.

³Except only a few, to whom perchance a great love of their prior lord had made them to remain with his wife and children, she (Carloman's wife) accompanied with them sought Italy. *comitāta* must be in the nominative; putting it in the ablative would result in the loss of the dactyl necessary for the meter.

adveniēns: arriving; singular nominative present participle from
 adveniō, advenire, advēnī, adventus
 amor: love; 1st person singular present passive from amō,
 amāre, amāvī, amātus
 at: and
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 comitāta: accompanied, guarded, attended; singular feminine
 nominative from comitātus -a -um
 coniuge: spouse; singular common ablative from conjunx,
 conjugis
 cum: with
 dēgere: to spend, carry on; present active infinitive from dēgō,
 dēgere, dēgi, -
 Dēsideriū: Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
 dominī: of (their) lord; singular masculine genitive from
 dominus, domini
 dominō: (from their) lord; singular masculine ablative from
 dominus, domini
 eius: his/her/its
 et: and
 exceptis: having been excepted; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from excipiō, excipere, excēpi, exceptus
 fēcerat: it had made; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 forte: by chance
 frāternae: fraternal; singular feminine genitive from frāternus,
 frāterna, frāternum
 haud: not, not at all
 illic: there
 Italiā: Italy (accusative case)
 māgnus: large; singular masculine nominative from māgnus,
 māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mūnimine: defence, fortification, rampart; singular neuter
 ablative from mūnimen, mūniminis
 nātis: children; plural ablative from nātus, nātī (son) or nāta,
 nātae (daughter)
 omnes: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 partis: party, faction, part; singular feminine genitive from pars,
 partis
 paucis: few, little; plural masculine ablative from paucus, pauci
 petīvīt: she sought; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 petō, petere, petivī, petitus
 posse: to be able; present active infinitive from possum, posse,
 potuī, -
 potentēs: mighty (men); plural common accusative from potēns,
 potentis (gen.), potentior -or -us, potentissimus -a -um
 priōris: previous; singular masculine genitive from prior, prior,
 prius
 procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine accusative from procer,
 proceris
 quae: who; singular female nominative of quis
 quibus: with whome; plural ablative of qui
 quiētam: quiet; singular feminine accusative from quiētus -am
 -um
 quondam: formerly
 quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 remanēre: to remain; present active infinitive from remaneō,
 remanēre, remānsī, remānsus
 retractantēs: withdrawing; plural common accusative present
 participle from retractō, retractāre, retractāvī, retractātus
 sē: themselves
 spērāns: hoping; singular nominative present participle from
 spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus
 sub: below, under
 subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō,
 subdere, subdidī, subditus
 summōs: highest, greatest; plural masculine accusative from
 summus, summa, summum
 suscēperat: he received; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
 tāli: such
 tantum: so much, so great, this many; singular neuter
 nominative from tantus, tanta, tantum
 villam: villa; singular feminine accusative from villa, villae
 vitam: life; singular feminine accusative from vita, vitae
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Rēx autem Carolus celebrāvit in Attiniācō
Nātālem Dominī, nec nōn Paschālia fēsta.
Paulō¹ Rōmānē dēfūctō praesule sēdis,
Suscēpit post hunc Adriānus pontificātum.
Et rēx Wormatiam Carolus collēgit in urbem
Francōrum procerēs ad concilium generāle;
Cum quibus ut bellō Saxonēs aggredērētur²
Dēcrēvit; quoniam Saxōnum proxima Francīs
Adiacet ad boream tellūs, vix līmite certō
Dīvīsī gentis finēs³ utriusque cohaerent.
Que⁴ tum vīcīnae quō plūs regiōne fuēre,
Tantō sēiūctās animīs discordia fēcit.
Fīnitimōs sed enim per agrōs utrimque solēbant⁵
Assiduē fierī cēdēs, incendia, praede.
Saxonum nātūra ferōx et pectora dūra,
Ferre iugum Chrīstī necdum dīgnāta⁶ suāve,
Dēmonicō nimium fuerant errōre subācta.

¹*Paul the Roman president of the seat (i.e. the Pope) having died, Adrian after him undertook the pontificate.* Pope Paul I was Pope from May 29th 757 to June 28th 767, then Pope Stephen III (who isn't mentioned in this line) was Pope from August 7th 768 to January 24th 772, then Pope Adrian I was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795. Mommsen includes the following footnote on *Paulō*: *immo Stephano IV*; by this Mommsen is referring to Pope Stephen III, since when Mommsen wrote his work Pope-elect Stephen (died March 25th 752 before taking Papal office) was considered an official Pope, but after 1961 was no longer deemed to have been a Pope, leading to a disparity in the numbering of Stephens.

²*With whom he decided they would attack the Saxons in war.*

³*With barely a certain border the divided boundaries of either people stood closely together.*

⁴*And thereupon when the neighbors went further out of the region, discord made their souls to be so separated.*
The proximity of the peoples led to conflict.

⁵*And both sides were accustomed to slaughter, fire, and prey to constantly occur through the neighboring fields.*

⁶*Nor had they (the Saxons) deigned to bear the gentle yoke of Christ, but had been subjugated too much in demonic error.* This is reminiscent of Matthew 11:30 "My yoke is easy and my burden is light".

ad: to, towards, at, according to
Adriānus: Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795
adiacet: it lies next to; 3rd person singular present active from adiaceō, adiacēre, adiacui
aggrederetur: they were attacking; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from aggredior, aggredi, aggressus
agrōs: fields; plural masculine accusative from ager, agrī
animīs: souls, minds, lives; plural feminine ablative from anima, animae
assiduē: permanently
Attiniacō: likely Attigny in the Ardennes department of modern-day France
autem: but, however, moreover
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī
boream: the north; singular masculine accusative from Boreās, Boreae
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
cēdēs: slaughter; plural masculine accusative alternative spelling from caedēs, caedis
celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus
certō: certain; singular masculine ablative from certus, certa, certum
Christī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christi
cohaerent: they stand together; 3rd person plural present active from cohaereō, cohaerēre, cohaesi, cohaesus
collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus
concilium: council, assembly; singular neuter accusative from concilium, conciliū
cum: with
dēcrēvit: he decided; 3rd person singular perfect active from dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus
dēfūctō: dead; singular masculine ablative perfect participle from defungor, defungi, defunctus sum
Dēmonicō: with the demonic; singular masculine ablative variant spelling from daemonicus -a -um
dignāta: having deemed worthy; plural neuter nominative perfect passive participle from dignor, dignārī, dignātus
discordia: discord, disagreement; singular feminine nominative from discordia, discordiae
divīsī: having been divided; plural masculine nominative from dividō, dividere, divisi, divisus
dominī: of the lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus, domini
dum: while, as long as, until
dūra: hard; plural neuter nominative from dūrus, dūra -um, dūrior -or -us, dūrissimus -a -um
enim: for, truly, really, indeed
errōre: error, wandering, deception; singular masculine ablative from error, erroris
et: and
fēcit: it made; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
ferōx: wild, bold, defiant; singular feminine nominative from ferōx, (gen.), ferōcis
ferre: to bear; present active infinitive from ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
fēsta: festivals; plural neuter accusative from fēstum, fēstī
fierī: to happen, to occur; present infinitive from fiō, fierī, factus sum
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural masculine nominative from finis, finis
finitimōs: neighbors; plural masculine accusative from finitimus, finitimi
Francis: the Franks
Francōrum: of the Franks
fuerant: they had been; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
fuēre: they were, alternative spelling of fuērunt; 3rd person plural perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
generāle: general; singular neuter accusative from generālis, generālis, generāle
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis
hunc: this; singular masculine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
incendia: fires; plural neuter nominative from incendium, incendii
iugum: yoke; singular neuter nominative from iugum, iugī
limite: limit; singular masculine ablative from limes, limitis
nātālem: birthday, Nātālem Domini = Christmas; singular common accusative from natalis, natalis, natale
nātūra: nature; singular feminine nominative from nātūra, nātūrae
necdum: but not yet
nimium: too much, superabundance; singular neuter nominative from nimius, nimia, nimium
nōn: not
Paschālia: Paschal, Paschālia fēsta = Paschal (Easter) feasts; plural neuter nominative from paschālis, paschālis, paschāle
Paulō: Pope Paul I; Pope from May 29th 757 to June 28th 767 (ablative case)
pectora: chests; plural neuter nominative from pectus, pectoris
per: through
plūs: more, from mūltus
pontificātum: pontificate; singular masculine accusative from pontificātus, pontificātus
post: behind, after, since
praede: plunder, prey; plural feminine nominative variant spelling from praeda, praedae
praesule: president; singular common ablative from praesul, praesulis
procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine accusative from procer, proceris
proxima: next, nearest; singular feminine nominative from proximus, proxima, proximum
que: and
quibus: what; plural dative or ablative of qui
quō: what; singular ablative of quis
quoniam: since, inasmuch now
regiōne: region; singular feminine after from regiō, regiōnis
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
Rōmānē: of the Romans; singular feminine genitive variant spelling of Rōmānae
Saxonēs: the Saxons
Saxōnum: of the Saxons
sed: but
sēdis: seat, in context the Papal Seat; singular feminine genitive from sēdēs, sēdis
sēiūntās: having been separated, excluded; plural feminine accusative perfect passive participle from sēiungō, sēiungere, sēiūnxī, sēiūntus
solēbant: they were accustomed to; 3rd person plural imperfect active from soleō, solēre, solitus sum
suāve: sweet; singular neuter accusative from suāvis, suāve, suāvior -or -us, suāvissimus -a -um
subācta: having been subjugated, conquered; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus
suscēpit: he undertook, he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptus
tantō: so much, so great, this many; singular masculine dative from tantus, tanta, tantum
tellūs: earth, territory; singular feminine nominative from tellūs, tellūris
tum: then
urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
ut: so that
utrimque: both sides
utrius: either; singular genitive from uter, utra, utrum
vīcinae: neighbors; plural feminine nominative from vicinus, vicina, vicinum
vix: barely
Wormatiam: Worms, Germany

Chrīsticolae¹ vērō iam longō tempore Francī
Catholicam tenuēre fidem, multīsque per orbem
Iam dominābantur populīs, quibus undique fultī,
Precipue virtūte Deī, quem rīte colēbant,
Hanc ūnam poterant nīmīrum vincere gentem.
Que nec rēge fuit saltem² sociāta sub ūnō,
Ut sē militiae pariter dēfenderet ūsū,
Sed variīs dīvisa modīs plēbs omnis, habēbat
Quot³ pāgōs tot paene ducēs, velut ūnius artūs
Corporis in dīversa forent hinc inde revulsī.
Sed generālis habet populōs dīvisio ternōs,
Īsignīta⁴ quibus Saxōnia flōruit ōlim.

Nōmina nunc remanent⁵, virtūs antīqua recessit:

¹*The Frankish Christ-worshippers, now for a long time, held the Catholic faith, and now were dominating many peoples throughout the world, whom (i.e. the Christians) were upheld on all sides, especially by the power of God, whom they worshipped with due observances, certainly was able to conquer this one people (the Saxons). Note that the Poet here expresses a positive view of the relationship between rightly worshipping God and gaining political power.*

²*And they were not, anyhow, associated under one king, that their militaries might defend themselves together in time of need.*

³*They had almost as many districts as dukes, as if the limbs of one body were wrenched away from here and from there.* Here the Poet remarks that the Saxons lack of political unification left them weak. forent is in the subjunctive to express the hypothetical or illustrative nature of this clause.

⁴*But generally the division has three peoples, by which the distinguished Saxons flourished once upon a time.* The three divisions of the Saxons mentioned are Westphalia, Engria, and Eastphalia, see the next page.

⁵*The names now remain, but the ancient virtue departed.* This is an excellent line.

antīqua: ancient; singular feminine nominative from antīquus, antīqua -um, antīquior -or -us, antīquissimus -a -um
artūs: joints, limbs; plural masculine nominative from artus, artūs
catholicam: Catholic; singular feminine accusative from catholicus, catholica, catholicum
Christicolae: Christian, worshiper of Christ; plural masculine nominative from Christicola, Christicolae
colēbant: they were worshipping; 3rd person plural imperfect active from colō, colere, coluī, cultus
corporis: body, flesh; singular neuter genitive from corpus, corporis
dēfenderet: they might defend; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensus
Dei: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
divērsa: diverse; singular feminine nominative from diversus, diversa, diversum
divīsa: having been divided; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dividō, dividere, divīsī, divisus
divisio: division; singular feminine nominative from divisio, divisiōnis. Typically there is a macron over the o but here it has to be a short syllable for metrical reasons.
dominābantur: they ruled; 3rd person plural imperfect active from dominor, dominārī, dominātus. The verb being the deponent dominārī and not domināre is clear from context. dominārī uses the dative instead of the accusative.
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine accusative from dux, ducis
fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fidei
flōruit: it blossomed, flourished; 3rd person singular perfect active from flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, -
forent: they were; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
Francī: the Franks
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
fultī: having been supported; singular masculine genitive perfect passive participle from fulciō, fulcire, fulsī, fultus
generālis: general; singular common nominative from generālis, generālis, generāle
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from gēns, gentis
habēbat: he had; 3rd person singular imperfect active from habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus
habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus
hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
hinc: from here
iam: now, presently
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inde: from there
insignita: having been marked, distinguished; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from insigniō, insignire, insignivī, insignitus
longō: long; singular masculine ablative from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
militiae: of the military; singular feminine genitive from militia, militiae
modis: ways; plural masculine ablative from modus, modī
multis: many; plural dative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
nec: not, not either
nimirum: certainly
nōmina: names; plural neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
nunc: now
ōlim: one day, once upon a time
omnis: all, every; singular common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
orbem: world; singular masculine accusative from orbis, orbis
paene: almost
pāgōs: district, region; plural masculine accusative from pāgus, pāgī
pariter: together
per: through
plēbs: common people; singular feminine nominative from plēbs, plēbis
populis: people, populace; plural masculine dative from populus, populi
populōs: peoples, populaces; plural masculine accusative from populus, populi
poterant: they were able to; 3rd person plural imperfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
precipuē: especially, chiefly; variant spelling from praecipuē (adverb)
que: and
quem: what, singular masculine accusative of qui
quibus: what; plural dative or ablative of qui
quot: quot ... tot ... = as many as
recessit: it withdrew; 3rd person singular perfect active from recēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessus
rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
remanent: they remain; 3rd person plural present active from remanēō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsus
revulsī: having been torn away; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from revellō, revellere, revelli, revulsus
rīte: duly, according to religious usage, with due observance; solemnly; well; (adverb)
saltem: anyhow
Saxōnia: Saxony
sē: himself
sed: but
sociāta: sociāta fuit = had been allied; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from sociō, sociāre, sociāvī, sociātus
sub: below, under
tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
tenuēre: they held, alternative spelling of tenuērunt; 3rd person plural perfect active from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
ternōs: three each; plural masculine accusative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
tot: quot ... tot ... = as many as
ūnam: one; singular feminine accusative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
undique: from all sides
ūniūs: of one (genitive of ūnus)
ūnō: one; singular masculine ablative from ūnus -a -um, primus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
ūsū: necessity; singular masculine ablative from ūsus, ūsūs
ut: so that
variīs: various, diverse; plural ablative from varius, varia, varium
velut: same as, for example
vērō: indeed, and
vincere: to conquer; present active infinitive from vincō, vincere, vici, victus
virtūs: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine nominative from virtūs, virtūtis
virtūtē: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine ablative from virtūs, virtūtis

Dēnique Westfalos vocitant in parte manentēs

Occiduā, quōrum nōn longē terminus amne

Ā Rhēnō distat; regiōnem sōlis ad ortum

Inhabitābant Osterliudī, quōs nōmine quīdam

Ostvalos aliō vocitant, cōnfīnia² quōrum

Īnfestant coniūcta suīs gēns perfida Sclāvī.

Inter praedictōs mediā regiōne morantur

Angariī, populus Saxonum tertius; hōrum

Patria Francōrum terrīs sotiātur ab austrō,

Ōceanōque³ eadem coniungitur ex aquilōne.

¹Thereupon they call (them) Westphalians in the part remaining to the west, whose border lies not far from the Rhine river.

²Whose boundaries the Slavs, a perfidious people joined to them, makes dangerous.

³For scansion: elision occurs here, so *que* + *ea* becomes one long syllable.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliō: other; singular masculine ablative from alius, alia, aliud
 amne: river; singular masculine ablative from amnis, amnis
 Angariī: the Angarians, a Saxon tribe
 aquilōne: north; singular masculine ablative from aquilō,
 aquilōnis
 austrō: south; singular masculine ablative from auster, austrī
 cōnfinia: borders; plural neuter nominative from confinium,
 cōnfiniī
 coniūncta: having been joined together; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from conjungo,
 conjungere, conjunxi, conjunctus
 coniungitur: it is joined together; 3rd person singular present
 passive from conjungo, conjungere, conjunxi, conjunctus
 dēnique: thereupon
 distat: it stands apart, it is distant; 3rd person singular present
 active from distō, distāre, -, -
 eadem: the same, singular feminine nominative or plural
 neutern nominative or ablative
 ex: out of, from
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 hōrum: these; plural masculine genitive of hic, haec, hoc
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 infēstant: they make dangerous, infest; 3rd person plural
 present active from infestō, infestāre, infestāvī, infestātus
 inhabitābant: they inhabited; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from inhabitō, inhabitāre, inhabitāvī, inhabitātus
 inter: between, among, during
 longē: afar; (adverb)
 manentēs: remaining; plural common nominative present
 participle from manēō, manēre, māsī, māsus
 mediā: middle; singular feminine nominative from medius,
 media, medium
 morantur: they dwell; 3rd person plural present from moror,
 morārī, morātus
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 occiduā: westerly; singular feminine ablative from occiduus,
 occidua, occiduum
 oceanō: ocean; singular masculine ablative from Oceanus,
 Oceani
 ortum: rising; singular masculine accusative from ortus, ortūs
 Osterliudī: Another name of the Eastphalians
 Ostvalōs: Eastphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
 patria: fatherland; singular feminine nominative from patria,
 patriae
 perfida: treacherous, deceitful; singular feminine nominative
 from perfidus, perfida, perfidum
 populus: people, populace; singular masculine nominative from
 populus, populi
 praedictōs: the aforesaid; plural masculine accusative perfect
 passive participle from praedicō, praedicere, praedixī,
 praedictus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis
 quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of quis
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 regiōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from regiō,
 regiōnis
 Rhēnō: the Rhine; singular masculine ablative from Rhēnus,
 Rhēni
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 Slavī: Slavs, plural masculine nominative from Sclavus, Sclavī
 sōlis: sun; singular masculine genitive from sōl, sōlis
 sotiātur: it is joined; 3rd person singular present passive from a
 variant spelling of sociāre
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 terminus: end, boundary, limit; singular masculine nominative
 from terminus, termini
 terris: lands; plural feminine ablative from terra, terrae
 tertius: third; singular masculine nominative from trēs -es -ia,
 tertius -a -um, terni -ae -a, ter
 vocitant: they call; 3rd person plural present active from vocitō,
 vocitāre, vocitāvī, vocitātus
 Westfalōs: Westphalians, members of a Saxon tribe

Hanc igitur Carolus statuit sibi subdere gentem.

Nec mora, cum tōtīs Francōrum vīribus ipsam

Aggressus¹, lātē ferrō vastāvit et ignī.

Castellum nātūrālī mūnīmine forte

Valde², manū quoque firmātum, quod barbara lingua

Nōminat Ērēsburg, validō cum rōbore cēpit.

Gēns eadem coluit simulācrum³, quod vocitābant

Irmīnsul, cuius similis factūra columne

Nōn operis parvī fuerat pariterque decōris.

Hoc rēx ēvertēns, mānsit tribus ipse diēbus

In castrīs iuxtā positīs⁴, tum continuātō

Aestātis fervōre diū, caelōque serēnō

Ārdēbant agrī, nec in ipsīs fontibus hūmor

Ūllus erat, multō squālēbant pulvere rīvī.

¹Without delay, with all the strength of the Franks he attacked it (the gentem, which refers to the Saxon people, see previous line), he destroyed widely with sword and fire. Aggressus, being from a deponent verb, would normally be written aggressus est for he attacked, but the est is omitted for metrical reasons.

²A very strong castle, with natural fortification, which the barbarian tongue names Eresburg, he seized strongly with strength and also with a firm hand. Alternatively, validō cum rōbore could mean with a strong stronghold or with strong oakenworks, referring to the castellum; rōbore is ambiguous in this way. For metrical reasons, the macron over the e in valde should be omitted during scansion.

³The same people worships an idol, which they call the Irmīnsul, whose manufacture is similar to a column, it was not a small work and likewise (was) of beauty.

⁴The king (Charlemagne) overturning this (the Irmīnsul), he himself remained three days in camp next to the posititon. In this part of the narrative, Charlemagne has not yet captured Eresburg but is camped out next to it, having torn down the idol that was located outside the fort, perhaps in a sacred grove.

aestātis: summer; singular feminine genitive from aestās,
aestātis
aggressus: he attacked; singular masculine nominative perfect
passive participle from aggredior, aggredi, aggressus
agrī: fields; plural masculine nominative from ager, agrī
ardēbant: they were burning; 3rd person plural imperfect active
from ardeō, ardere, ārsi, ārsus
barbara: barbarous; singular feminine nominative from
barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a
-um
caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus,
caeli
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
Carolingian Dynasty
castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter accusative from
castellum, castellī
castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from castrum, castrī
cēpit: he took; 3rd person singular perfect active from capiō,
capere, cēpi, captus
coluit: (the people) worshipped; 3rd person singular perfect
active from colō, colere, colui, cultus
columnne: column; singular feminine genitive variant spelling
from columna, columnae
continuātō: continuous; singular masculine ablative from
continuātus, continuāta, continuātum
cuius: whose; singular genitive from quis
cum: with
decōris: elegance, beauty; singular masculine genitive from
decus, decōris
diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
diū: for a long time (adverb)
eadem: the same, singular feminine nominative
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
esse, fui, futūrus
Ērēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day
Obermarsberg
et: and
everens: overthrowing, destroying; singular nominative
present participle from ēvertō, ēvertere, ēverti, ēversus
factūra: making, manufacture, creation; singular feminine
nominative from factūra, factūrae
ferrō: iron; singular neuter ablative from ferrum, ferri
fervōre: boiling heat; singular masculine ablative from fervor,
fervōris
firmātum: having been hardened, confirmed; singular neuter
nominative perfect passive participle from firmō, firmāre,
firmāvi, firmātus
fontibus: fountains; plural masculine ablative from fōns, fontis
forte: strong; singular neuter accusative from fortis, fortis, forte
Francōrum: of the Franks
fuerat: he had been; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from
sum, esse, fui, futūrus
gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
gēns, gentis
gentem: people, clan, nation; singular feminine accusative from
gēns, gentis
hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
hoc: this; singular neuter accusative of hic, haec, hoc
hūmor: liquid, fluid; singular masculine nominative from hūmor,
hūmōris
igitur: therefore
igni: fire; singular masculine ablative from ignis, ignis
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
ipsam: itself; singular feminine accusative from ipse, ipsa,
ipsum
ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
ipsum
ipsis: itself; plural dative or ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
Irminsul: the name of an idol, or type of idol that the Saxons
worshipped
iuxtā: near, nearly
lātē: widely; adverb from lātus, -a, -um
lingua: tongue, language; singular feminine nominative from
lingua, linguae
mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from
maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
manū: hand; singular feminine ablative from manus, manūs
mora: delay; singular feminine nominative from mora, morae
multō: many; singular masculine ablative from multus, multa
-um, -, plūrimus -a -um
mūnimine: defence, fortification, rampart; singular neuter
ablative from mūnimen, mūnīminis
nātūrālī: natural; singular neuter ablative from nātūrālis,
nātūrālis, nātūrāle
nec: nor, not either
nōminat: it names; 3rd person singular present active from
nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvi, nōminātus
nōn: not
operis: of work; singular neuter genitive from opus, operis
pariter: likewise
parvī: small; singular neuter genitive from parvus -a -um
positis: having been placed; plural ablative perfect passive
participle from pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus
pulvere: dust; singular masculine ablative from pulvis, pulveris
quō: what; singular ablative of quis
quod: that; singular neuter accusative of qui
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
rīvī: small streams; plural masculine nominative from rīvus, rīvī
rōbre: strength, stronghold; singular neuter ablative from
rōbur, rōboris
serēnō: serene; singular masculine ablative from serēnus,
serēna, serēnum
sībī: to himself; singular dative of sē
similis: similar; singular common genitive from similis, simile,
similior -or -us, simillimus -a -um
simulācrum: image, likeness; singular neuter nominative from
simulācrum, simulācrī
squālēbant: they were dry, rough, barren; 3rd person plural
imperfect active from squāleō, squālere, squālui, -
statuit: he decided; 3rd person singular present active from
statuō, statuere, statui, statūtus
subdere: to place under, subdue; present active infinitive from
subdō, subdere, subdidī, subditus
tōtis: whole, total; plural ablative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen
-ius)
tribus: three; plural ablative from trēs -es -ia, tertius -a -um,
terni -ae -a, ter
tum: then
ūllus: any; singular masculine nominative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum
(gen -ius)
valdē: very
validō: strong, healthy; singular masculine ablative from
validus, valida, validum
vāstāvit: he ravaged, devastated; 3rd person singular perfect
active from vāstō, vāstare, vāstāvi, vāstātus
vīribus: strength; plural feminine ablative from vis, viris
vocitābant: they called; 3rd person plural imperfect active from
vocitō, vocitāre, vocitāvi, vocitātus

Iamque fatīgābat graviter rēgālia castra
Aucta¹ calōre sitis, sed vīs dedit omnipotentis,
Cui placuit fānī subversio² iūsta profānī,
Ut mediante diē subitō per concava sicci
Cuiusdam torrentis, erat quī proximus illīs,
Sufficiēns exercituī prōrumperet unda.
His gestīs cum rēx Wisuram³ vēnisset ad amnem,
Obsidibus bis sex ipsā dē gente receptīs,
Ad patriam rediit magnā cum prōsperitāte.

¹*And now the increased thirst from the heat was fatiguing the royal encampment (Charlemagne's troops), but (God) gave of his omnipotent strength.*

²*Whom the just subversion of the profane temple pleased.*

³*With these things having been done, the king came to the river Weser.* The subjunctive *vēnisset* is used as part of a circumstantial clause. It appears that the story relates how Charlemagne's campaign was threatened by a drought, but that his troops miraculously received water, allowing them to prevail.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
 aucta: increased; singular feminine nominative from auctus -a
 -um
 bis: twice
 calōre: warmth, heat; singular masculine ablative from calor,
 calōris
 castra: forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
 concava: hollow, concave (likely a dry riverbed); singular
 feminine accusative from concavus, concava, concavum
 cui: who; singular dative from quis
 cum: with
 cuiusdam: of a certain; genitive from quidam
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare,
 dedī, datus
 diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diē
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 exercitū: army; singular masculine dative from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 fānī: temple; singular neuter genitive from fānum, fānī
 fatigābat: it was wearying; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from fatigo, fatigare, fatigavi, fatigatus
 gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from
 gēns, gentis
 gestis: having been carried out; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
 graviter: gravely, adverb from gravis, grave
 his: to these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 iamque: and already, and now
 illis: them; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 ipsa: itself; singular feminine ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iūsta: just, righteous; singular feminine nominative from iustus,
 iūsta -um, iūstior -or -us, iūstissimus -a -um
 māgnā: large; singular feminine ablative from māgnus, māgna
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mediante: mid-day (in context), to be in the middle; singular
 ablative present participle from mediō, mediāre, mediāvī,
 mediātus
 obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
 omnipotentis: all-powerful; singular genitive from omnipotēns,
 (gen.), omnipotentis
 patriam: father; singular feminine accusative from patria,
 patriae
 per: through
 placuit: he pleased; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 placeō, placere, placui, placitus
 profānī: profane; singular masculine genitive from profānus,
 profāna, profānum
 prōrumperet: it was rushing forth; 3rd person singular
 imperfect active subjunctive from prōrumpō, prōrumpere,
 prōrūpī, prōruptus
 prosperitāte: success, prosperity; singular feminine ablative
 from prosperitās, prosperitātis
 proximus: neighbor; singular masculine nominative from
 proximus, proxima, proximum
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 receptis: having been received; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus
 rediit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 redeō, redire, redivī(i), reditus
 rēgālia: regal, royal; plural neuter accusative from rēgālis,
 rēgālis, rēgāle
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sed: but
 sex: six
 sicci: of a dry place; singular masculine genitive from siccus,
 sicca, siccum
 sitis: thirst; singular feminine nominative from sitis, sitis
 subitō: suddenly
 subversio: overthrow, destruction; singular feminine nominative
 from subversio, subversiois
 sufficiens: sufficing; singular nominative present participle from
 sufficio, sufficere, suffeci, suffectus
 torrentis: torrent, rushing stream; singular feminine genitive
 from torrēns, torrentis
 unda: wave; singular feminine nominative from unda, undae
 ut: so that
 venisset: he had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 subjunctive from veniō, venire, venī, ventus
 vīs: strength; singular feminine genitive from vīs, vīs
 Wisuram: the River Weser (accusative case)

Annō 773

Missīs lēgātīs, Adriānus pāpa sacrātus
Auxilium Carolī studuit dēposcere magnī
Adversus Langōbardōs, quōrum¹ fuit illō
Tempore rēx Dēsīderius; nam valde premēbat
Improba² Rōmānōs huius violentia gentis.
Et quia tunc illī pars maxima subdita³ rēgnō
Ītalīae tōtīus erat, terrāsque per illās,
Scīlicet⁴ hostīlēs, nōn quemquam mittere tūtē
Rōmānus praesul potuit, quī trāmite rēctō
Francōrum terrās peteret, cōnscendere nāvem
Fēcit apud Rōmam lēgātum nōmine Petrum
Ut mare circuitū longō flūctūsque pererrāns
Suspectum vitāret iter: sīc sēpe⁵ vidētur
Tutior ōceanī fervor pelagīque procella,
Quam mentēs hominum, quās turbida commovet īra.

¹Whose king at that time was Desidarius.

²For the evil violence of this people (the Lombards) greatly oppressed the Romans (the Papal states).

³And because the greatest part of all Italy was controlled by that kingdom.

⁴Really enemies, the Roman president (the Pope) couldn't safely send anyone who sought Frankish lands through a straight path.

⁵Thus often the fervor of the ocean and the storms of the sea appear safer than the minds of men, which turbid anger moves.

Adriānus: Pope Adrian I, who was Pope from February 1st 772 to December 25th 795
adversus: against; preposition that takes the accusative
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
apud: at, by, near
auxilium: help, aid; singular neuter accusative from auxilium, auxiliū
Carolī: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
circuitū: circuit, outer shore; singular masculine ablative from circuitus, circuitus
commovet: it agitates; 3rd person singular present active from commoveō, commovere, commōvi, commōtus
cōnsendere: to climb up, mount; present active infinitive from cōnscondō, cōnscondere, cōnscondī, cōnscondens
dēpōscere: to demand, require, challenge; present active infinitive from dēpōscō, dēpōscere, dēpōscī, -
Dēsiderius: King Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
et: and
fēcīt: he made; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
fervor: boiling heat, passion; singular masculine nominative from fervor, fervōris
flūctūs: waves, billows, turbulences; plural masculine accusative from flūctus, flūctus
Francōrum: of the Franks
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis
hominum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from homō, hominis
hostilēs: enemies; plural common accusative from hostilis, hostilis, hostile
huius: of this; singular genitive of hic, haec, hoc
illās: them; plural feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
illī: that; singular neuter dative from ille, illa, illud
illō: that; singular neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud
improba: bad; singular feminine nominative from improbus, improba, improbum
īra: anger; singular feminine nominative from ira, irae
Italiae: Italy (genitive or locative case)
iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from iter, itineris
Langōbardōs: the Lombards
lēgātīs: legate, ambassador; plural masculine ablative from lēgātus, lēgātī
lēgātum: legate, ambassador; singular masculine accusative from lēgātus, lēgātī
longō: long, far; singular masculine ablative from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
māgnī: great; singular masculine genitive from māgnus, māgna -um, māior -or -us, maximus -a -um
mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
maxima: biggest; singular feminine nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, māior -or -us, maximus -a -um
mentēs: minds; plural feminine nominative from mēns, mentis
missīs: having been sent; plural ablative perfect passive participle from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
mittere: to send; present active infinitive from mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus
nam: yes, truly
nāvem: boat; singular feminine accusative from nāvis, nāvis
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
ōceani: ocean; singular masculine genitive from Oceanus, Oceani
Pāpa: Pope; singular masculine nominative from Papa, Papae
pars: part; singular feminine nominative from pars, partis
pelagī: of the sea; singular neuter genitive from pelagus, pelagī
per: through
pererrāns: wandering through, rambling over; singular nominative present participle from pererrō, pererrāre, pererrāvī, pererrātus
peteret: he was seeking; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from petō, petere, petīvī, petītus
Petrum: Peter; singular masculine accusative from Petrus, Petri
potuit: he was able; 3rd person singular perfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
praesul: president; singular common nominative from praesul, praesulis
premēbat: it was oppressing; 3rd person singular imperfect active from premō, premere, pressī, pressus
procella: storm, violence, sudden attack; singular feminine nominative from procella, procellae
quam: how? how much?
quās: who; plural female accusative of quis
quemquam: anyone; singular masculine accusative of quisquam
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quia: because
quōrum: of whom; plural masculine genitive of quis
rēctō: straight, proper, correct; singular masculine ablative from rēctus, rēcta -um, rēctior -or -us, rēctissimus -a -um
rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter dative from rēgnum, rēgnī
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
Rōmam: Rome; singular feminine accusative from Rōma, Rōmae
Rōmānōs: Romans; plural masculine accusative from romanus, romana, romanum
Rōmānus: Roman; singular masculine nominative from romanus, romana, romanum
sacrātus: sacred; singular masculine nominative from sacrātus -a -um
scilicet: really, obviously
sēpe: often; variant spelling of saepe
sic: thus
studuit: he was eager for; 3rd person singular perfect active from studeō, studere, studuī, -
subdita: having been placed under, subjugated; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from subdō, subdere, subdidī, subditus
suspectum: suspected; past passive participle from suspiciō, suspicere, suspēxi, suspectus
tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
tōtius: of the whole; singular genitive from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
trāmite: footpath; singular masculine ablative from trāmes, trāmitis
tunc: then
turbida: turbid, troubled, muddy; singular feminine nominative from turbidus, turbida, turbidum
tūtē: safely; adverb from tūtus, tūta -um, tūtior -or -us, tūtissimus -a -um
tūtior: safer; singular common nominative from tūtus, tūta -um, tūtior -or -us, tūtissimus -a -um
ut: so that
valdē: very
vidētur: it appears; 3rd person singular present passive from videō, videre, vidī, vīsus
violentia: violence; singular feminine nominative from violentia, violentiae
vītāret: he might avoid; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from vitō, vitāre, vitāvī, vitātus

Hīc igitur Petrus Rōmā dīrēctus¹ ab urbe,
Per mare Massiliam petiit, longumque deinde
Per terrēnum² iter, in villā Theodōne vocātā
Īnsignis Carolī pietātem rēgis adīvit,
Ōrāns dēvōtē satis, ut dēfendere vellet³
Ecclesiam Petrī, summus quī clāviger⁴ aulae
Illī celēstis dare praemia maxima posset;
Nec nōn pontificis succurreret ānxietātī,
Rōmānīque simul populī mala plūrima passi⁵,
Cui libertātis iam spēs, vītaeque tenendae
Ūnica⁶ post Dominum, tantum restāret in illō.
Tālibus auditis, causam rēx prōtinus omnem
Sollicitō volvēns animō, satis affore iūstum
Perpendit, grātumque Deō, dēfēnsor ut ipse
Sēdis apostolicae tōtīs prō vīribus esset.

¹Here, therefore, Peter having been directed from the city of Rome, sought Marseille through the sea.

²And thereafter a long trip over land. The -um in terrēnum elides for scansion.

³Pleading devoutly enough that he (Charlemagne) might defend the Church of Peter.

⁴Who, highest key-bearer in the caelestial court, could give to him (Charlemagne) the greatest reward. Here Peter, the Papal legate, promises Charlemagne spiritual rewards for his military support of the Papal States against the Lombards.

⁵And also that he might aid the anxiety of the Pope and the many evils suffered by the Roman people.

⁶To whom now liberty, hope, and the keeping of (their) lives, alone after the Lord (God), lay only in him.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 adivit: he besought, approached, visited; 3rd person singular perfect active from adeō, adire, adivī, aditus
 affore: to be (in the future) future infinitive from adsum
 animō: soul, mind, live; singular masculine ablative from animus, animi
 anxietātī: anxiety; singular feminine dative anxietās, anxietātis
 apostolicae: of the apostolic; singular feminine genitive from apostolicus, apostolica, apostolicum
 auditis: having been heard; plural ablative from audiō, audire, audivī, auditus
 aulae: court; singular feminine genitive from aula, aulae
 Caroli: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 causam: cause; singular feminine accusative from causa, causae
 celestis: heavenly; singular common genitive from celestis, celeste, celestior -or -us, celestissimus -a -um
 clāviger: key-bearer; singular masculine nominative from clāviger, clāvigerī
 cui: who; singular dative from quis
 dare: to give; present active infinitive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 dēfendere: to defend; present active infinitive from dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfensus
 dēfensor: defender, protector; singular masculine nominative from dēfensor, dēfensoris
 deinde: thereafter
 Deō: to God; singular masculine dative from Deus, Dei
 dēvōtē: devotedly; adverb from dēvōtus, dēvōta, dēvōtum
 directus: having been directed; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dirigō, dirigere, dirēxī, dirēctus
 Dominum: the Lord; singular masculine accusative from dominus, domini
 ecclēsiam: church; singular feminine accusative from ecclēsia, ecclēsiae
 esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 fore: to be (in the future); future infinitive of sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 grātum: agreeable; singular neuter accusative from grātus, grāta -um, grātior -or -us, grātissimus -a -um
 hīc: here. Hic (meaning 'this') would fit better in context but wouldn't fit the meter.
 iam: already, now
 igitur: therefore
 illi: to that one (Charlemagne); singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illō: in that one (Charlemagne); singular masculine ablative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insignis: distinguished; singular common genitive from insignis, insignis, insigne
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from iter, itineris
 iūstum: just, righteous; singular neuter accusative from iūstus, iūsta -um, iūstior -or -us, iūstissimus -a -um
 libertātis: of liberty; singular feminine genitive from libertās, libertātis
 longum: long, far; singular neuter accusative from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
 mala: evil, bad
 mare: sea; singular neuter accusative from mare, maris
 Massiliam: Marseille, a city in southern France (accusative case)
 maxima: very big; plural neuter accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, maior -or -us, maximus -a -um
 nec: nec non = and also
 nōn: not
 omnem: all, every; singular common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 ōrāns: requesting, praying; singular nominative present participle from ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus
 passi: passi + est = they suffered. Est is omitted for metrical reasons.
 per: through
 perpendit: he decided, he weighed carefully; 3rd person singular present active from perpendō, perpendere, perpendi, perpēnsus
 petiit: he sought for; 3rd person singular perfect active from petō, petere, petivī, petitus
 Petri: Peter; singular masculine genitive from Petrus, Petri
 Petrus: Peter; singular masculine nominative from Petrus, Petri
 pietātem: dutiful conduct, piety; singular feminine accusative from pietās, pietātis
 plūrima: very many; plural neuter accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 pontificis: of the Pope; singular masculine genitive from pontifex, pontificis
 populi: the (Roman) people; plural masculine nominative from populus, populi
 posset: that he could; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from possum, posse, potuī, -
 post: behind, after, since
 praemia: rewards; plural neuter accusative from praemium, praemi(i)
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 prōtinus: forthwith, immediately
 quī: who; singular masculine nominative of quis
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 restāret: it remained; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from restō, restāre, restitī, -
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Rōmā: Rome; singular feminine ablative from Rōma, Rōmae
 Rōmānique: and the Romans
 satis: enough (adverb)
 sēdis: seat; singular feminine genitive from sēdēs, sēdis
 simul: at the same time as
 sollicitō: agitated, restless, anxious; singular masculine ablative from sollicitus, sollicita, sollicitum
 spēs: hope; singular feminine nominative from spēs, speī
 succurreret: he might bring aid; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from succurro, succurrere, succurri, succursus
 summus: highest, greatest; singular masculine nominative from summus, summa, summum
 tālibus: such (things); plural ablative from tālis, tālis, tāle
 tantum: so much, so great, this many; singular neuter nominative from tantus, tanta, tantum
 tenendae: holding; singular feminine genitive gerund from teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus
 terrēnum: land, ground; singular neuter accusative from terrenus, terrena, terrenum
 tōtis: whole, total; plural ablative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 unica: only, sole; singular feminine nominative from ūnicus, ūnica, ūnicum
 Theodōne: the name of a villa that Charlemagne was in
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
 ut: so that
 vellet: that he would want; 3rd person singular future active from vello, vellere, velli, vulsus
 villā: villa; singular feminine ablative from villa, villae
 vīribus: strength; plural feminine ablative from vis, viris
 vītae: life; singular feminine genitive from vīta, vītae
 vocātā: having been called; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 volvens: rolling, mulling; singular nominative present participle from volvo,olvere, volvi, volutus

Atque suō statim rēgnō collēgit ab omnī
Rōboris inmēnsī variīs ex gentibus agmen.
Quod sēcum dūcēns, Genuam pervēnit in urbem,
Quam¹ rapidō cursū Rhodanus praeterfluit amnis;
Tum geminō² Langōbardōs invādere bellō
Dēcrēvit, populumque suum dīvīsīt, et ūnam
Cum duce Bernhardō partem praecēperat ire
Per montem Iovis—id nōmen vetus indidit³ error—
At reliquam per Cīnisiūm rēx dūxerat ipse.
Trāncēnsīs igitur horrendīs Alpibus, īstar⁴
Turbinis Ausoniae duplex exercitus arva
Irruerat, lātē rēgnum vastāns opulentum.

¹*Which the Rhone river flows past with rapid course.*

²*Then he decided to invade the Lombards with two-fold war.* Charlemagne split his troops into two parts.

³*With Bernard (son of Charles Martel and uncle of Charlemagne) he had commanded (one) party to go through Mount Jove -- an ancient error bestowed that name.* Bernard likely went through the Great St. Bernard Pass in the Alps. Perhaps the "ancient error" mentioned was the pagan belief in Jupiter/Jove. The Bernard mentioned is not the same Bernard as Saint Bernard of Clairvaux, who lived 1090-1153.

⁴*Like a whirlwind of Ausonia the double army had rushed into the fields, widely ravaging the opulent kingdom.* Ausonia is a poetic name for Italy.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 agmen: marching army; singular neuter accusative from agmen, agminis
 Alpius: Alps (usually pl.), mountains to the north of Italy; plural feminine ablative from Alpis, Alpis
 amnis: river; singular masculine nominative from amnis, amnis
 arva: fields; plural neuter accusative from arvum, arvī
 at: and
 atque: and
 Ausoniae: of Ausonia, a poetic name for Italy
 bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī
 Bernhardō: Bernard, son of Charles Martel and uncle of Charlemagne
 Cīnisiū: probably a city or region in the Lombard Kingdom, perhaps the city of Cassino
 collēgit: he assembled, he collected; 3rd person singular perfect active from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus
 cum: with
 cursū: course; singular neuter ablative from currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus
 dēcrevit: he decided; 3rd person singular perfect active from dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvi, dēcrētus
 dīvisit: he divided; 3rd person singular perfect active from dividō, dividere, divisi, divisus
 duce: leader; singular masculine ablative from dux, ducis
 dūcens: leading; singular nominative present participle from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus
 duplex: double; singular nominative from duplex, (gen.), duplicis
 dūxerat: he had read; 3rd person singular pluperfect from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus
 error: error, wandering, deception; 1st person singular present passive from errō, errāre, errāvi, errātus
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitūs
 geminō: double; singular masculine ablative from geminus, gemina, geminum
 gentibus: peoples, clans, nations; plural feminine ablative from gēns, gentis
 Genuam: Genua, modern-day Genoa, Italy
 horrendis: horrendous; plural ablative from horrendus -a -um
 id: it
 igitur: therefore
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 indidit: it named after; 3rd person singular perfect active from indō, indere, indidī, inditus
 inmēnsi: of immense; singular masculine genitive from inmēnsus, inmēnsa, inmēnsus
 instar: as big as
 invādere: to invade; present infinitive from invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus
 Iovis: Jovis, Jupiter
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ire: to go; present infinitive from eō, ire, iī, itus (irregular)
 irruerat: it had forced its way in; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from irruō, irruere, irruī, irrutus
 Langōbardōs: the Lombards (plural accusative)
 lātē: widely; adverb from lātus, -a, -um
 montem: mountain; singular masculine accusative from mōns, montis
 nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
 omnī: all, every; singular ablative from omnis, omnis, omne
 opulentum: rich; singular masculine accusative from opulentus -a -um
 partem: party, part; singular feminine accusative from pars, partis
 per: through
 pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular present active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
 populum: people, populace; singular masculine accusative from populus, populi
 praeceperat: he had ordered; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from praecipio, praecipere, praecēpi, praeceptus
 praeterfluit: it flows past; 3rd person singular present active from praeterfluo, praeterfluere, -, -
 quam: how? how much?
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rapidō: quick, rapid; singular masculine ablative from rapidus, rapida -um, rapidior -or -us, rapidissimus -a -um
 rēgnō: kingdom; singular neuter ablative from rēgnum, rēgnī
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter nominative from rēgnum, rēgnī
 reliquam: remaining; singular feminine accusative from reliquus, reliqua, reliquum
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Rhodanus: the Rhone; singular masculine nominative from Rhodanus, Rhodanī
 rōboris: strength; singular neuter genitive from rōbur, rōboris
 sēcum: with oneself
 statim: immediately
 suō: his; singular ablative of suus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 trāscēnsis: having been passed over; plural ablative perfect passive participle from trāscendō, trāscendere, trāscendī, trāscēnsus
 tum: then
 turbinis: whirlwind; singular masculine genitive from turbō, turbinis
 ūnam: one; singular feminine accusative from ūnus -a -um, prīmus -a -um, singulī -ae -a, semel
 urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 variis: various, diverse; plural ablative from varius, varia, varium
 vāstāns: ravaging, devastating; singular nominative present participle from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvi, vāstātus
 vetus: old; singular nominative from vetus, veteris (gen.), veterior -or -us, veterrimus -a -um

Iamque metus cūctōs Francōrum perculit ingēns.

Nam Dēsīderium, prīmō quī bella parābat,

Sē frūstrā Carolō spērāns² obsistere posse,

Congressū necdum factō, terrōre fugāvit,

Et clausum Ticinō, cui nunc est Pāpia nōmen,

Rēgius admōtīs exercitus³ undique castrīs

Obsēdit, variīsque modīs per plūrima temptāns

Temporis hibernī spatiō mōlīmina tōtō,

Nōn urbis poterat mūrōs irrumpere ferrō.

¹And now a great fear of the Franks struck everyone.

²Vainly himself hoping to be able to oppose Charlemagne, before a meeting (in battle between Charlemagne and Desiderius) having occurred, he (Charlemagne) routed (Desidarius) in terror and (Desiderius) having been shut up in Ticinum. Here *clausum* is a past passive participle in the accusative which matches *Dēsīderium*, also in the accusative. *Dēsīderium* is the object of *fugāvit*. *Ticinō* is in the ablative of location.

³The regal army (of the Franks) having moved up camps everywhere beseiged (Ticinum/Pavia) and with various methods through many exertions trying (to breach the city wall) through the total space of the time of winter, was not able to break the walls of the city with iron. However, in June 774 Desiderius succumbed to the seige and surrendered.

admōtīs: having been moved up, brought near; plural ablative perfect passive participle from admovēō, admovēre, admōvī, admōtus
 bella: battles, wars; plural neuter accusative from bellum, bellī
 Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 castrīs: camps; plural neuter ablative from castrum, castrī
 clausum: having been enclosed, shut up; singular neuter accusative perfect passive participle from claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus
 congressū: meeting; singular masculine ablative from congressus, congressūs
 cui: who; singular dative from quis
 cūctōs: all, whole; plural masculine accusative from cūctus, cūcta, cūctum
 Dēsīderium: Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 exercitus: army; singular masculine nominative from exercitus, exercitūs
 factō: having been made; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 ferrō: iron; singular neuter ablative from ferrum, ferri
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 frūstrā: futile (adverb)
 fugāvit: he routed, chased away; 3rd person singular perfect active from fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus
 hibernī: winter, winter camp; singular masculine genitive from hibernus, hiberna, hibernum
 iam: already, now, soon
 ingēns: huge, enormous; singular nominative from ingēns, ingentis (gen.), ingentior -or -us, ingentissimus -a -um
 irrumpere: to invade, penetrate; present infinitive from irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irrūptus
 metus: fear; singular masculine nominative from metus, metūs
 modīs: ways; plural masculine ablative from modus, modī
 mōlimina: exertions, efforts; plural neuter accusative from mōlimen, mōliminis
 mūrōs: city walls; plural masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī
 nam: yes, truly
 necdum: not yet
 nōmen: name; singular neuter nominative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 nunc: now
 obsēdit: he besieged; 3rd person singular perfect active from obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus
 obsistere: to oppose, resist, withstand; present infinitive from obsistō, obsistere, obstitī, obstitus
 Papia: Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the Lombards from 572 to 774.
 parābat: he was preparing; 3rd person singular imperfect active from parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus
 per: through
 perculit: it struck down, overpowered; 3rd person singular perfect active from percellō, percellere, perculī, perculsus
 plūrima: very many; plural neuter accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 posse: to be able; present infinitive from possum, posse, potuī, -
 poterat: he was able to; 3rd person singular imperfect active from possum, posse, potuī, -
 prīmō: first; singular masculine ablative from prīmus, prīma, primum
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 rēgius: royal, regal; singular masculine nominative from rēgius, rēgia, rēgium
 se: himself
 spatiō: space; singular neuter ablative from spatium, spati(i)
 spērāns: hoping; singular nominative present participle from spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus
 temporis: of the time; singular neuter genitive from tempus, temporis
 temptāns: trying; singular nominative present participle from temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus
 terrōre: terror; singular masculine ablative from terror, terrōris
 tōtō: whole, total; singular ablative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 undique: from all sides
 Ticinō: Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the Lombards from 572 to 774.
 urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
 variīs: various, diverse; plural ablative from varius, varia, varium

Annō 774.

Tālēs Ītalīcīs dum rēs agerentur in hōrīs¹,
Saxonēs sibi contiguōs invādere finēs
Ausī² Francōrum, pāgum quī dīcitur Hassī
Praedantur, flammīsque simul populantur et armīs.
Quōs animāvit ad hoc longinqua profectio³ rēgis,
Crēdentēs ulciscendī sībī tunc fore⁴ tempus
Damna, prius per eum que maxima sustinuēre.
Quī tamen usque locum quī Frīdēshlar vocitātur
Prōgressī, quandam cupiērunt trādere flammīs
Ecclesiam, quam sacrāvit Bonifācius⁵ illīc
Martir et antistes Chrīstō dīlēctus in aevum.
Hoc frūstrā nīsōs⁶ facinus complēre nefandum,
Invāsīt subitō terror dīvinitus ingēns,
Atque fugā turpī trepidōs repedāre coēgit
Ad patriam, quōs nōn hostēs, nōn arma fugārunt.

¹While such things were being done in Italy in those times.

²The Saxons dared to invade the boundaries of the Franks neighboring themselves. Ausī would usually be *ausī sunt* for they dared; in a poetic context it is permitted to omit the *sunt* for metrical purposes.

³Whom the long departure of the king inspired to this. *Profectiō* typically has a macron over the *o*, but it must be short here to fit the meter.

⁴Then believing the time to be of avenging themselves the very great damages, previously that they had sustained through him (Charlemagne). *Maxima* modifies *damna*, *fore* is the future infinitive of *esse*, and *sustinuēre* is not an infinitive but rather an alternate way to spell *sustinuērunt*.

⁵Which Boniface, martyr and overseer ever-beloved by Christ, consecrated there. Saint Boniface (AD 675-754) famously chopped down Donar's Oak in Fritzlar.

⁶They vainly advanced to complete this wicked act, suddenly a massive terror from heaven assailed (them) and forced the trembling ones (the Saxons) to retreat in turpid flight to their fatherland, whom were routed not by enemies, nor by weapons (but by the supernatural intervention of God).

ad: to, towards, at, according to
aevum: eternity; singular neuter accusative from aevum, aevi
agerentur: they were being done; 3rd person plural imperfect passive subjunctive from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
animāvit: it animated, inspired; 3rd person singular perfect active from animō, animāre, animāvi, animātus
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
antistes: overseer; singular common nominative from antistes, antistitis
arma: weapons; plural neuter nominative from armum, armī
armīs: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
atque: and
ausī: ausī sunt = they dared, sunt is omitted for metrical reasons; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from audeō, audere, ausus sum
Bonifācius: Saint Boniface, AD 675-754
Christō: Christ (ablative case)
coēgit: it forced; 3rd person singular perfect active from cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus
complere: to complete, to fill up; present infinitive from compleō, complere, complevi, complētus
contiguōs: bordering, neighboring, contiguous; plural masculine accusative from contiguus, contigua, contiguum
crēdentēs: believing; plural common nominative present participle from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus
cupiērunt: they desired, alternative spelling of cupivērunt; 3rd person plural perfect active from cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupītus
damna: damages, injuries; plural neuter accusative from damnum, damni
dicitur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus
dīlēctus: having been loved, beloved; singular masculine nominative from dilectus, dilectus
divīnitus: divinely, of heaven (adverb)
dum: while, as long as, until
ecclēsiam: church; singular feminine accusative from ecclēsia, ecclēsiae
et: and
eum: to him; singular masculine accusative from is, ea, id
facinus: crime, outrage; singular neuter accusative from facinus, facinoris
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis
flammis: flames; plural feminine ablative from flamma, flammae
fore: to be (in the future); future infinitive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
Francōrum: of the Franks
Frīdēshlar: Fritzlär, Germany
frūstrā: futile
fugā: flight, escape; singular feminine ablative from fuga, fugae
fugārunt: they routed, chased away, variant spelling of fugāvērunt; 3rd person plural perfect active from fugō, fugare, fugāvi, fugātus
Hassī: Hesse, a region in Germany
hoc: this; singular neuter accusative from hic, haec, hoc
hōris: times; plural feminine ablative from hōra, hōrae
hostēs: enemies; plural common nominative from hostis, hostis
illīc: there
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
ingēns: huge, enormous; singular nominative from ingēns, ingentis (gen.), ingentior -or -us, ingentissimus -a -um
invādere: to invade; present infinitive from invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus
invāsīt: it invaded; 3rd person singular perfect active from invādō, invādere, invāsi, invāsus
Italicis: in Italy; plural masculine ablative from Italicus, Italici
locum: place; singular masculine accusative from locus, locī
longinqua: long, prolonged; singular feminine nominative from longinquus, longinqua -um, longinquior -or -us, longinquissimus -a -um
martir: martyr, one who dies for their faith
maxima: biggest; plural neuter accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
nefandum: impious, wicked; singular neuter accusative from nefandus, nefanda, nefandum
nīsōs: having advanced, pressed upon; plural masculine accusative perfect participle from nitor, nitī, nīsus sum
nōn: not
pāgum: district, region; singular masculine accusative from pāgus, pāgi
patriam: fatherland; singular feminine accusative from patria, patriae
per: through
populantur: they are ravaged, devastated; 3rd person plural present passive from populō, populāre, populāvi, populātus
praedantur: they are despoiled; 3rd person plural present passive from praedor, praedārī, praedātus sum
prius: before
profectiō: departure, source; singular feminine nominative from profectiō, profectiōnis
prōgressi: prōgressi sunt = they advanced, the sunt is omitted for metrical reasons; plural masculine nominative perfect participle from prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum
quam: how? how much?
quandam: a certain; singular feminine accusative form quidam
que: and
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of quis
rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
repedāre: to return, retreat; present infinitive from repedō, repedāre, repedāvi, repedātus
rēs: things; plural feminine nominative from rēs, rei
sacrāvit: he consecrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from sacrō, sacrāre, sacrāvi, sacrātus
Saxonēs: the Saxons
sibi: to himself; singular dative of sē
simul: at the same time as
subitō: suddenly
sustinuere: they sustained; 3rd person plural perfect active from sustineō, sustinere, sustinui, sustentus
tālēs: such; plural common nominative from tālis, tālis, tāle
tamen: however
tempus: time, period; singular neuter nominative from tempus, temporis
terror: terror; singular masculine nominative from terror, terrōris
trādere: to hand over; present active infinitive from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trādītus
trepidōs: agitated, nervous; plural masculine accusative from trepidus, trepida, trepidum
tunc: then
turpī: ugly, filthy; singular feminine ablative from turpis, turpe, turpior -or -us, turpissimus -a -um
ulciscendī: avenging, punishing; singular masculine genitive future participle from ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum
ūsq̄: until, all the way, up until
vocitātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocitō, vocitāre, vocitāvi, vocitātus

At rēx, dispositīs legiōnibus ad Ticinēsum
Obsidiōne¹ iūgī populum bellōque premendum,
Ōrandī² causā Rōmae loca sāncta petīvit.
Illic supplicibus vōtīs ex corde perāctīs,
Ad Ticinum rediit, que iam certāmine longō
Fessa³ repugnandī vīrēs āmiserat omnēs.
Dēdita⁴ tum Francīs haec urbs clārissima, cūnctīs
Exemplō fuerat reliquīs; nam prōtinus⁵ omnēs
Trādiderant Carolō sēsē concorditer urbēs
Eiusdem rēgnī, quod iam⁶ sibi iūre subāctum
Disposuit, quantum⁷ potuit prō tempore tālī
Ad sēdēs etenim⁸ cupiēns remeāre paternās,
Accelerābat iter, sēcum dūcēns memorātum⁹
Ītalīae rēgem, noviter quem coeperat¹⁰ armīs.
Hīc hūmānārum¹¹ videās lūdībria rērum,
Quam variō cursū vītae rota volvitur huius.

¹And to press the people (of Pavia/Ticinum) with constant seige and war. An English-like word order would be (ad) premendum populum (cum) iūgī obsidiōne (et) bellō.

²For the reason of prayer he sought the holy places of Rome. Ōrandī is a genitive gerund.

³He returned to Pavia/Ticinum, which, now tired by long battle, had lost all strength of fighting. Repugnandī is a genitive gerund.

⁴This most famous (city) having then been given to the Franks, it was an example to all the rest (of the cities of Lombardy).

⁵Because immediately all cities of the same kingdom (Lombardy) gave themselves over to Charlemagne amicably.

⁶Which he now arranged having subjected them rightly to himself.

⁷As much as he could in such time.

⁸Because, desiring to return to his paternal habitations (the land of the Franks).

⁹Leading with him the aforementioned king of Italy (Desiderius).

¹⁰Whom recently he had seized with weapons.

¹¹Here you see the mockeries of human affairs, how by various courses the wheel of this life is turned.

accelerābat: he was speeding up; 3rd person singular imperfect active from accelerō, accelerāre, accelerāvī, accelerātus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 āmiserat: it had lost; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from āmittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus
 armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
 at: and
 bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī
 Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 causā: reason, cause; singular feminine ablative from causa, causae
 certāmine: struggle, fight; singular neuter ablative from certāmen, certāminis
 clārissima: very clear, very famous; singular feminine nominative from clārus, clāra -um, clārior -or -us, clārissimus -a -um
 coeperat: he had seized (based on context and etymology), he had started; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus
 concorditer: harmoniously, amicably (adverb)
 corde: heart; singular neuter ablative from cor, cordis
 cūctis: all, whole; plural ablative from cūctus, cūcta, cūctum
 cupiēns: desiring; singular nominative present participle from cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitus
 cursū: course; singular neuter ablative from currō, currere, cucurrī, cursus
 dēdita: having been surrendered; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditus
 dispositis: having been arranged, distributed; plural ablative perfect passive participle from dispōnō, dispōnere, disposui, dispositus
 disposuit: he arranged, distributed; 3rd person singular perfect active from dispōnō, dispōnere, disposui, dispositus
 dūcēns: leading; singular nominative present participle from dūcō, dūcere, duxī, ductus
 eius: his/her/its
 etenim: because
 ex: out of, from
 exemplō: sample, model, copy; singular neuter ablative from exemplum, exemplī
 fessa: tired; singular feminine nominative from fessus, fessa, fessum
 Francis: the Franks
 fuerat: he had been; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 haec: this; singular feminine nominative from hic, haec, hoc
 hic: here;
 huius: of this; singular genitive of hic, haec, hoc
 hūmānārum: human; plural feminine genitive from hūmānus, hūmāna -um, hūmānior -or -us, hūmānissimus -a -um
 iam: already, now, soon
 illīc: there
 italiae: Italy (genitive or locative case)
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from iter, itineris
 iūgī: continuous; singular feminine ablative from iūgis, iūge
 iūre: rightly (adverb), according to law
 legiōnibus: legions; plural feminine ablative from legiō, legiōnis
 loca: places; plural neuter accusative from locum, loci
 longō: long, far; singular masculine ablative from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us, longissimus -a -um
 lūdibria: mockeries, wantonness; plural neuter accusative from lūdibrium, lūdibrii
 memorātum: the aforementioned (from context), having been remembered; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from memorō, memorāre, memorāvī, memorātus
 nam: for
 noviter: recently
 obsidiōne: siege; singular feminine ablative from obsidiō, obsidiōnis
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 ōrandī: praying; singular masculine genitive gerund from ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus
 paternās: paternal; plural feminine accusative from paternus, paterna, paternum
 perāctis: having been carried through; plural ablative perfect passive participle from peragō, peragere, perēgī, perāctus
 petivīt: he sought for; 3rd person singular perfect active from petō, petere, petivī, petitus
 populum: people, populace; singular masculine accusative from populus, populi
 potuit: he was able; 3rd person singular perfect active from possum, posse, potui, -
 premendum: pressing, overwhelming, oppressing; singular neuter nominative gerund from premō, premere, pressi, pressus
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 prōtinus: immediately
 quam: how
 quantum: how much?
 que: and
 quem: what, singular masculine accusative of qui
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 redivit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from redeō, redire, redivī(ii), reditus
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 rēgni: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnum, rēgni
 reliquīs: remaining; plural neuter ablative from reliquum, reliqui
 remeāre: to come back, return; present infinitive from remeō, remeāre, remeāvī, remeātus
 repūgnandi: fighting back; singular masculine genitive gerund from repūgnō, repūgnāre, repūgnāvī, repūgnātus
 rērum: of things; plural feminine genitive from rēs, rēi
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Rōmae: of Rome; singular feminine genitive from Rōma, Rōmae
 rota: wheel; singular feminine nominative from rota, rotae
 sācta: holy
 sēcum: with oneself
 sēdēs: lands; plural feminine accusative from sēdēs, sēdis
 sēsē: himself
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 subāctum: having been subjugated, conquered; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from subigō, subigere, subēgī, subāctus
 supplicibus: suppliant; plural masculine ablative adjective from supplex, supplicis
 tāli: such
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
 Ticinēsum: residents of Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the Lombards from 572 to 774.
 Ticinum: Pavia a.k.a. Ticinum, capital of the Kingdom of the Lombards from 572 to 774.
 trādidērāt: they had handed over; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus
 tum: then
 urbs: city; singular feminine nominative from urbs, urbis
 urbēs: cities; plural feminine nominative from urbs, urbis
 variō: various, diverse; singular masculine ablative from varius, varia, varium
 videās: you may see; 2nd person singular present active subjunctive from videō, vidēre, vidi, visus
 vīrēs: strength; plural feminine accusative from vis, viris
 vitae: of life; singular feminine genitive from vita, vitae
 volvitur: it is rolled; 3rd person singular present passive from volvo, volvere, volvi, volutus
 vōtis: vows; plural neuter ablative from vōtum, vōti

Hesternō Dēsīderiūs diadēmate rēgnī
Flōruit, ēn hodiē¹ est pauper, captīvus et exul.
Fīlius illīus, cognōmine dictus Adalgīs,
Cum Langōbardīs in eō spēs ampla manēret,
Diffidēns rēbus patriae, sē contulit inde
Ad Cōstantīnum, Grēcōrum scēptra regentem²;
Ā quō patricius³ praeclārō mūnere factus,
Hoc in honōre suae permānsit ad ultima vītae.
Rēx autem Carolus veniēns, dum⁴ cognitus eius
Vēlōx adventus nec dum Saxōnibus esset,
Fēcerat, ut triplex exercitus in regiōnēs
Illōrum missus, multīs afflīgeret ipsōs
Cēdibus ac praedīs, loca dēnique plūrima vastāns
Hinc est cum spoliīs victor regressus opīmīs.

¹Yesterday *Desiderius* flourished in the crown of his kingdom, behold today he is a pauper, captive, and exile. The *ē* in *hodiē* elides, giving a scansion of DDSSDT.

²To *Constantine*, reigning the scepters of the Greeks. Constantine V was the Emporer of the Eastern Roman/ Byzantine Empire from 741 to 775 and gave shelter to Adalgis, the son of Desiderius, who fled to Constantinople.

³By whom he (*Adalgis*) was made (a) patrician with remarkable employment/office.

⁴When his swift advance was not yet known to the Saxons.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ac: and
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adventus: arrival, approach; singular masculine nominative from adventus, adventus
 affligeret: he was striking, throwing down; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from affligō, affligere, afflīxi, afflictus
 Adalgis: Adalgis, son of Desiderius
 ampla: large; singular feminine nominative from amplus, ampla -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
 autem: but, however, moreover
 cēdibus: slaughters; plural feminine ablative variant spelling from caedēs, caedis
 captivus: captive; singular masculine nominative from captivus, captivī
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 cōgnitus: having been known; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from cognosco, cognoscere, cognovi, cognitus
 cōgnōmine: name, surname; singular neuter ablative from cōgnōmen, cōgnōminis
 Cōnstantinum: Constantine V, Emperor of the Byzantine Empire from 741 to 775; singular masculine accusative from Cōnstantinus, Cōnstantinī
 contulit: he brought together; 3rd person singular perfect active from cōferō, cōferre, contuli, collātus
 cum: with
 dēnique: finally
 Dēsiderius: King Desiderius, final King of the Lombards (720-786)
 diadēmate: diadem, crown; singular neuter ablative from diadēma, diadēmatis
 dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 diffidēs: despairing (of); singular nominative present participle from diffido, diffidere, diffisus sum
 dum: while, as long as, until
 eius: his/her/its
 ēn: behold!
 eō: with him; singular masculine ablative from is, ea, id
 esset: it was; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 exercitus: army; singular masculine accusative from exercitus, exercitūs
 exul: exile, wanderer; singular common nominative from exul, exulis
 factus: having been made; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from faciō, facere, fēci, factus
 fēcerat: he had done; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from faciō, facere, fēci, factus
 filius: son; singular masculine nominative from filius, fili
 flōruit: he flourished; 3rd person singular perfect active from flōreō, flōrēre, flōrui, -
 Grēcōrum: Greek; plural masculine genitive from grēcus, grēca, grēcūm
 hesternō: yesterday; singular masculine ablative from hesternus, hesterna, hesternum
 hinc: from here
 hoc: this; singular neuter nominative from hic, haec, hoc
 hodiē: today
 honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōris
 illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 ipsōs: themselves
 Langōbardis: the Lombards
 loca: places; plural neuter accusative from locum, loci
 manēret: it remained; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 missus: missus est = was sent, est is omitted for metrical reasons; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from mittō, mittere, misi, missus
 multis: many; plural ablative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 mūnere: employment, office; singular neuter ablative from mūnus, mūneris
 nec: nor, not either
 opimis: well-fed, fat, fertile; plural ablative from opīmus, opīma, opimum
 patriae: fatherland; singular feminine genitive from patria, patriae
 patricius: patrician; singular masculine nominative from patricius, patriciī
 pauper: poor; singular nominative from pauper, pauperis (gen.), pauperior -or -us, pauperrimus -a -um
 permansit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from permanēō, permanēre, permansi, permansus
 plūrima: very many; singular feminine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 praeclārō: remarkable; singular neuter ablative from praeclārus, praeclāra, praeclārūm
 praedis: plunder; plural feminine from praeda, praedae
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 rēbus: things; plural feminine ablative from rēs, rei
 regentem: reigning; singular common accusative present participle from regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus
 regiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgni: of the kingdom; singular neuter genitive from rēgnūm, rēgni
 regressus: regressus est = he returned; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from regredior, regredi, regressus sum
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Saxonibus: the Saxons
 scēptra: scepters; plural neuter nominative from scēptrum, scēptri
 se: himself
 spēs, spei: hope; singular feminine nominative from spēs, spei
 spoliis: spoils, booty; plural neuter ablative from spoliūm, spoliī
 suae: her; singular feminine gen. or dat. or pluraul feminine nom. or voc. from suus
 triplex: triple; singular nominative from triplex, (gen.), triplicis
 ultima: end, farthest, last; singular feminine nominative from -, -, ulterior -or -us, ultimus -a -um
 ut: so that
 vāstāns: ravaging, devastating; singular nominative present participle from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus
 vėlōx: quick; singular masculine nominative from vėlōx, vėlōcis (gen.), vėlōcior -or -us, vėlōcissimus -a -um
 veniēns: coming; singular nominative present participle from veniō, venire, venī, ventus
 victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor, victōris
 vītāe: of life; singular feminine genitive from vīta, vītāe

Annō 775.

Rēx hiemis tempus dūcēns¹ in Cārisiācō,
Nōmine quō quēdam rēgālis vīlla vocātur,
Illūc Francōrum procerēs tōtumque senātum
Convocat, ac multum tractāns² dē rēbus agendīs,
Et variīs³, quibus indiguit rēs pūblica, cūrīs,
Inprīmīs hoc cōsiliū perhibētur inīsse,
Ut iugiter bellum Saxonibus ingererētur⁴,
Quōs expertus⁵ erat fideī vel foederis omnis
Immemorēs, nunquam sub pāce quiēscere velle.
Hinc statuit, requiēs⁶ illīs ut nūlla darētur,
Dōnec gentīlī⁷ rītū cultūque relictō,
Christicolae fierent, aut dēlērentur in aevum.
Ō pietās benedicta Deī, quae vult genus omne
Hūmānum fierī salvum, quia nōverat huius
Nōn aliter⁸ gentīs mollīrī pectora posse,
Disceret ut cervīx reflectere dūra rigōrem
Ingenitum, mītīque iugō sē subdere Chrīstī.

¹The king, leading/spending the time of winter in Carisiacus.

²And treating much of the things to be done.

³And with various cares, which the state needed.

⁴That continuously war with the Saxons might be waged. The subjunctive is used because this is a purpose clause; the imperfect tense of *ingererētur* doesn't really matter for translation. There must be a short *u* on *iūgiter* to fit the meter.

⁵(Charlemagne) had experienced them (the Saxons) (to be) unmindful of faith or every treaty.

⁶That no rest be given to them.

⁷Until, heathen ritual and cult having been left, they might have become Christian, or have been destroyed forever.

⁸Who knew the chests/hearts of this people (the Saxons) could not otherwise be softened, that (their) stiff neck might learn to turn back their innate stiffness, and subdue itself to the gentle yoke of Christ. Note the Saxon Poet's expressed thankfulness to the forced conversion of his people.

ac: and
aevum: into eternity; singular neuter accusative from aevum, aevi
agendīs: to be done; plural ablative future passive participle from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
aliter: otherwise
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
aut: or
bellum: battle, war; singular neuter nominative from bellum, bellī
benedicta: blessed; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from benedicō, benedicere, benedixī, benedictus
Cārisiācō: the name of a villa
cervix: neck; singular feminine nominative from cervīx, cervīcis
Christī: Christ; singular masculine genitive from Christus, Christī
Christicolae: Christians
cōsiliū: plan, advice, council; singular neuter nominative from consilium, consiliū
convocat: he calls together, assembles; 3rd person singular present active from convocō, convocāre, convocāvi, convocātus
cultū: cult; singular neuter ablative from colō, colere, coluī, cultus
cūris: cares; singular feminine ablative from cura, curae
darētur: might be given; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from dō, dare, dedī, datus
dē: of, from, away from, down from
Dei: god, diety; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
dēlērentur: they might be erased/destroyed; 3rd person plural imperfect passive subjunctive from dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētus
disceret: it might learn; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from discō, discere, didicī, discitus
dōnec: until
dūcēs: leading; singular nominative present participle from dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus
dūra: hard, stiff; singular feminine nominative from dūrus, dūra -um, dūrior -or -us, dūrissimus -a -um
et: and
expertūs: expertus erat = he had experienced; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from experior, experiri, expertus
fidei: faith; singular feminine genitive from fidēs, fidei
fierent: they might become; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from fiō, fieri, factus sum
fieri: to become; infinitive from fiō, fieri, factus sum
foederis: treaty; singular neuter genitive from foedus, foederis
Francōrum: of the Franks
gentili: heathen, pagan; singular masculine ablative from gentilis, gentilis
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gens, gentis
genus: type, family, offspring; singular neuter accusative from genus, generis
hiemis: of winter; singular feminine genitive from hiemps, hiemis
hinc: from here
hoc: this; singular neuter nominative from hic, haec, hoc
huius: of this; singular genitive of hic, haec, hoc
hūmānum: human; singular neuter nominative from hūmānus, hūmāna -um, hūmānior -or -us, hūmānissimus -a -um
illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
illūc: over there
immemorēs: unmindful, forgetful; plural common nominative from immemor, (gen.), immemoris
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
indiguit: it lacked; 3rd person singular perfect active from indigeo, indigere, indigui, -
ingenitum: innate, in-born; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from ingignō, ingignere, ingenui, ingenus
ingererētur: it might be waged; 3rd person singular imperfect passive subjunctive from ingerō, ingerere, ingessi, ingestus
inisse: to have undertaken; perfect active infinitive from ineō, inire, inivī(ī), initus
inprimis: above all
iūgiter: continually (adverb)
iugō: yoke; singular neuter ablative from iugum, iugi
miti: soft, mild, gentle; singular ablative from mitis, mīte, mītor -or -us, mītissimus -a -um
molliri: to be softened, weakened; passive infinitive from molliō, mollire, mollivī, mollitus
multum: many; singular neuter accusative from multus, multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
noverat: he had known; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus
nūlla: no, none, not any; singular feminine nominative from nullus, nūlla, nullum (gen -ius)
nunquam: never
o: O; interjection
omne: all, every; singular neuter accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
omnis: all, every; singular common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
pāce: peace; singular feminine ablative from pāx, pācis
pectora: chests; plural neuter nominative from pectus, pectoris
perhibētur: it is asserted; 3rd person singular present passive from perhibeō, perhibere, perhibui, perhibitus
pietās: dutiful conduct, piety; singular feminine nominative from pietās, pietātis
posse: to be able; person present active from possum, posse, potui, -
procerēs: noblemen; plural masculine nominative from procer, proceris
pūblica: public; singular feminine nominative from pūblicus, pūblica, pūbicum
quae: who; plural female nom. or neuter nom. or acc. of quis
quia: because
quibus: what; plural dative or ablative of qui
quiēscere: to rest; present infinitive from quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētus
quō: what; singular ablative of quis
quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of quis
rēbus: things; plural feminine ablative from rēs, rei
reflectere: to bend back; present infinitive from reflectō, reflectere, reflexī, reflexus
rēgālis: regal, royal; singular common nominative from rēgālis, rēgālis, rēgāle
relictō: having been left behind; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from relinquo, relinquere, reliqui, relictus
requiēs: rest, repose; singular feminine nominative from requiēs, requiētis
rēs: things; singular feminine nominative from rēs, rei
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
rigōrem: rigor, roughness; singular masculine accusative from rigor, rigōris
rītū: rite, ceremony; singular masculine ablative from rītus, rītus
salvum: healthy, safe; singular neuter nominative from salvus, salva, salvum
Saxonibus: the Saxons (ablative case)
sē: himself
senātum: senate; singular masculine accusative from senātus, senātus
statuit: he decided; 3rd person singular present active from statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus
sub: below, under
subdere: to place under; infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdidi, subditus
tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus, temporis
tōtum: whole, total; singular neuter accusative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
tractāns: discussing, handling, trying; singular nominative present participle from tractō, tractāre, tractāvi, tractātus
ut: so that
variis: various, diverse; plural ablative from varius, varia, varium
vel: or
velle: to want;
villa: farm, villa; singular feminine nominative from villa, villae
vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocāre, vocāvi, vocātus
vult: he wants; singular 3rd person present from volō, velle, voluī (irr.)

Ob¹ hōc doctōrem tālem fideīque magistrum,
Scīlicet īnsignem Carolum dōnāvit eīsdem,
Quī bellō premeret², quōs nōn ratiōne domāret,
Sīcque vel invītōs salvārī³ cōgeret ipsōs.
Hoc īnspīrātum cordī dīvīnitus eius
Ūtile⁴ cōsiliū comitantur strēnua facta.
Quippe ducēs omnisque simul dēlēcta iuventūs
Ad Duriam vīcum properant: nam rēge iubente
Illic conventus populī generālis habētur.
Atque dehinc grandī trānsmisso flūmine Rhēnō,
Saxōnum Carolus finēs hostīliter intrat
Ac prīmō Sigiburg castellum coepit, et inde
Ērēsburg petiit, quam captam dīximus⁵ urbem.
Sed nē⁶ praesidiō Francīs fore posset, eandem
Indigenē dēstrūxērunt: hanc dēnique rūrsus
Mūnīvit, posuitque suās illic legiōnēs;
Inde gradū celerī Wisuram pervēnit ad amnem.

¹From this (reason) (God) gave such a learned man and captain of the faith, indeed the distinguished Charlegmange, to the same (people, the Saxons).

²Who would press by war those he (could) not subdue by reason.

³And thus the unwilling he would force to be saved themselves.

⁴This beneficial plan, having been divinely inspired to his heart, strenuous deeds accompany (it).

⁵Which we said was the captured city. See page 12 for the initial capture of Eresburg.

⁶But so that it might not be for the protection of the Franks, the indigenous (people, the Saxons), had destroyed (the fortifications of Eresburg).

ac: and
ad: to, towards, at, according to
amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
atque: and
bellō: battle, war; singular neuter ablative from bellum, bellī
captam: having been taken; singular feminine accusative
perfect passive participle from capiō, capere, cēpi, captus
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
Carolingian Dynasty
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
Carolingian Dynasty
castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter nominative from
castellum, castelli
celerī: quick; singular ablative from celer, celeris -e, celerior -or
-us, celerrimus -a -um
coepit: he started; 3rd person singular present active from
coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus
cōgeret: he might force; 3rd person singular imperfect active
subjunctive from cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactus
comitantur: they accompany; 3rd person plural active deponent
from comitor, comitārī, comitātus
cōsiliū: plan, advice, council; singular neuter accusative from
consilium, consili(i)
conventus: assembly, coming together; singular feminine
nominative from conventus, conventus
cordī: heart; singular neuter dative from cor, cordis
dehinc: from now on, from this place
dēlecta: having been chosen; singular feminine nominative past
passive participle from dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum
dēnique: thereafter, finally
dēstruxerunt: they destroyed; 3rd person plural perfect active
from dēstruō, dēstruere, dēstruxī, dēstrūctus
dīvinitus: divinely, of heaven (adverb)
diximus: we said; 1st person plural perfect active from dicō,
dicere, dixī, dictus
doctōrem: teacher, instructor; singular masculine accusative
from doctor, doctōris
domāret: he subdued, tamed; 3rd person singular imperfect
active subjunctive from domō, domāre, domuī, domitus
dōnāvit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dōnō,
dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine nominative from dux, ducis
Duriā: Düren, a town in North Rhine-Westphalia, Germany
eandem: singular feminine accusative from idem, eadem, idem
eis: to them; plural dative or ablative from is, ea, id
eius: his/her/its
Ērēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day
Obermarsberg
et: and
facta: deeds; plural neuter nominative from factum, factī
fideī: of faith; singular feminine genitive from fidēs, fideī
finēs: boundaries, ends, limits; plural common accusative from
finis, finis
flūmine: river; singular neuter ablative from flūmen, flūminis
fore: to be; future active infinitive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
Francis: the Franks
generālis: general; singular common genitive from generālis,
generālis, generāle
gradu: step; singular masculine ablative from gradus, gradūs
grandi: great, grand, imposing; singular ablative from grandis,
grandis, grande
habētur: it is had; 3rd person singular present passive from
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus
hanc: this; singular feminine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
hostiliter: in a hostile manner (adverb)
illic: there
inde: from there, since
indigene: by the natives, denizens; adverbial form of indigenus,
indigeni
īnsignem: distinguished; singular common accusative from
īnsignis, īnsignis, īnsigne
īnspirātum: having been inspired; singular neuter accusative
perfect passive participle from īnspirō, īnspirāre, īnspirāvī,
īnspirātus
intrat: he entered; 3rd person singular present active from
intrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus
invītōs: unwilling; plural masculine accusative from invītus,
invīta, invītum
ipsōs: themselves;
iubente: commanding; singular ablative present participle from
iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussum
iuventūs: youth; singular feminine nominative from juvenus,
juventutis
legiōnēs: legions; plural feminine accusative from legiō, legiōnis
magistrum: teacher; singular masculine accusative from
magister, magistrī
mūnivit: he fortified; 3rd person singular perfect active from
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnivī, mūnītus
nam: yes, truly
nē: not
nōn: not
ob: for, because of, towards
omnis: all, every; singular common nominative from omnis,
omnis, omne
pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular present active from
pervenīō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
petivit: he asked for; 3rd person singular perfect active from
petō, petere, petivī, petitus
populī: people, populace; singular masculine genitive from
populus, populi
posset: it might have been able; 3rd person singular imperfect
active subjunctive from possum, posse, potuī, -
posuit: he put; 3rd person singular perfect active from pōnō,
pōnere, posuī, positus
praesidiō: defence; singular neuter ablative from praesidium,
praesidiū
premeret: he pressed, overwhelmed; 3rd person singular
imperfect active subjunctive from premō, premere, pressī,
pressus
přimō: first; singular masculine ablative from přimus, přima,
přimum
properant: they hurry; 3rd person plural present active from
properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus
quam: how? how much?
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quippe: indeed, surely, the thing is
quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of quis
ratiōne: reason; singular feminine ablative from ratiō, ratiōnis
rēge: king; singular masculine ablative from rēx, rēgis
Rhēnō: the Rhine; singular masculine ablative from Rhēnus,
Rhēnī
rūrsus: again
salvārī: to be saved; present passive infinitive from salvō,
salvāre, salvāvī, salvātus
Saxōnum: of the Saxons
scilicet: really
sed: but
sic: thus
Sigiburg: A Saxon hillfort in Western Germany
simul: at the same time as
strēnua: brisk, vigorous; plural neuter nominative from
strēnuus, strēnua, strēnum
suās: their; plural accusative feminine of suus
tālem: such; singular common accusative from tālis, tālis, tāle
trānsmisō: having been sent; singular masculine ablative
perfect passive participle from trānsmittō, trānsmittere,
trānsmisi, trānsmisus
urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
ūtile: usefully; adverb from ūtilis, ūtilis, ūtile
vel: or
vicum: village; singular masculine accusative from vicus, vicī
Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany

Cui iuxtā montem quī Brūnesberg vocitātur,
Obvia¹ magna fuit cupiēns obsistere turba,
Nē fluvium trānsīret, et hōc cōnāmine cassō.
Fugit enim prīmō statim certāmine pulsā,
Innumerōsque diē ferrum prōstrāverat illō.
Inde movēns Carolus regiōnēs vēnit ad illās,
Quās Osterliudī retinent, sēditque locātis
Ad fluvium castrīs, quī nunc Ōvaccra vocātur.
Tunc illī quīdam², quī dē prīmōribus eius
Gentis erat, supplex occurrit nōmine Hessī;
Partis et illius pariter plēbs obvia tōta
Vēnerat, obsidibusque datīs quōs³ iusserat ipse,
Sē servāre fidem rēgī per maxima spondent
Iūrāmenta. Quibus⁴ cūctīs hōc ōrdine gestīs,
In pāgum rediit, quem dīcunt nōmine Bukkī.
Illic occurrēre ducēs simul Angariōrum
Cum populō, similique modō rēgālibus omnēs
Dum pārent⁵ iussīs, iūrāmentisque fidēlēs
Sē fore cōfirmant, reditum parat ilico victor.

¹In the way was a large crowd desirous of resisting, that he might not cross over the river, and, in vain battle, it fled having immediatēy with the first blow of battle, and countless on that day the sword had laid low in that (place).

²Then there a certain (man) named Hessi, who was of the prominent men of his people, ran (up to Charlemagne as a) suppliant.

³And the hostages having been given which he (Charlemagne) himself had ordered.

⁴With all these things having been set in this order.

⁵And in a similar way while all obeyed the royal commands, and with oaths confirmed to him to be faithful, the victor (Charlemagne) immediately prepared to return (to his homeland). parent takes the dative instead of the accusative, which is why iussīs rēgālibus is in the dative.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
Angariōrum: of the Angarians, a Saxon tribe
Brunesberg: the name of a mountain or hill in Saxony
Bukki: possibly Breisgau, a region in Germany
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
cassō: hollow, vain, useless; singular masculine ablative from cassus, cassa, cassum
castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from castrum, castrī
certāmine: contest, struggle; singular neuter ablative from certāmen, certāminis
cōnāmine: effort, struggle; singular neuter ablative from cōnāmen, cōnāminis
cōnfirmant: they confirmed, affirmed; 3rd person plural present active from cōnfirmō, cōnfirmāre, cōnfirmāvī, cōnfirmātus
cui: to whom; singular dative from quis
cum: with
cūctis: all, whole; plural ablative from cūctus, cūcta, cūctum
cupiēns: desiring; singular nominative present participle from cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupītus
datis: having been giving; plural ablative past passive participle from dō, dare, dedi, datus
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dicunt: they say; 3rd person plural present active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
diē: day; singular common ablative from diēs, diēi
ducēs: leaders; plural masculine nominative from dux, ducis
dum: while, as long as, until
eius: his/her/its
enim: for, truly, really, indeed
erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
et: and
ferrum: sword; singular neuter nominative from ferrum, ferri
fidēlēs: faithful persons, confidants; plural common nominative from fidelis, fidele, fidelior -or -us, fidelissimus -a -um
fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fides, fidei
fluvium: river; singular masculine accusative from fluvius, fluvii
fore: to be; future active infinitive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
fugit: it (the crowd) fled; 3rd person singular perfect active from fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitus
fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis
gestis: having been carried out; plural ablative perfect passive participle from gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
Hessi: the name of a man sent to Charlemagne to negotiate peace
hōc: this; singular neuter ablative of hic, haec, hoc
ilico: immediately (adverb). Usually spelled ilicō; however the o must be short here to fit the meter.
illās: those; plural feminine accusative from ille, illa, illud
illī: to that one (Charlemagne); from ille, illa, illud. Alternatively: there, belonging to that party (adverb)
illic: there
illius: of that; singular genitive from ille, illa, illud
illō: that; singular masculine or neuter ablative from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inde: from there, since
innumerōs: countless; plural masculine accusative from innumerus, innumera, innumerus
ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
iūrāmenta: oaths; plural neuter accusative from iūrāmentum, iūrāmentī
iūrāmentis: oaths; plural neuter ablative from iūrāmentum, iūrāmentī
iusserat: he had ordered; 3rd person singular pluperfect from iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus
iussis: commands, orders; plural dative perfect passive participle from iubeō, iubere, iussi, iussus
iuxtā: near, nearly
locātis: having been stationed; plural ablative from locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus
māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
maxima: very big; plural neuter accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
modō: manner, way; singular masculine ablative from modus, modi
montem: mountain; singular masculine accusative from mōns, montis
movēns: moving; singular nominative present participle from moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus
nē: not
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
nunc: now
obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
obsistere: to oppose, resist, withstand; present active infinitive from obsistō, obsistere, obstiti, obstitus
obvia: in the way; hostile; singular feminine nominative from obvius, obvia, obvium
occurrere: they ran; 3rd person plural perfect alternative to occurrerunt from occurrō, occurrere, occurrī / occurrī, occursus
occurrit: he ran; 3rd person singular perfect from occurrō, occurrere, occurrī / occurrī, occursum
omnēs: all, every; plural common nominative from omnis, omnis, omne
ōrdine: order; singular masculine ablative from ōrdō, ōrdinis
Osterliudi: Another name of the Eastphalians
Ovacra: probably the Oker River, a tributary of the River Aller, in Lower Saxony
pāgum: district, region; singular masculine accusative from pāgus, pāgi
parat: he prepares; 3rd person singular present active from parō, parare, parāvī, parātus
pārent: they obey; 3rd person plural present active from pāreō, pāre, pāruī, pāritūrus
pariter: together, likewise
partis: region, faction; singular feminine genitive from pars, partis
per: through
plēbs: common people; singular feminine nominative from plēbs, plēbis
populō: peoples, populaces; singular masculine ablative from populus, populi
přmo: first; singular masculine ablative from přmus, přma, přmum
přmōribus: chiefs, nobles; plural ablative from přmoris, přmoris, přmore
prostrāverat: it had struck down; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from prosternō, prosternere, prostrāvī, prostrātus
pulsā: having been hit; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from pello, pellere, pepuli, pulsus
quās: which; plural female accusative of quis
quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
quī: which; plural masculine nominative of quis
quibus: with which; plural ablative of qui
quōs: which; plural masculine accusative of quis
reditum: return; singular masculine accusative from reditus, reditus
redivit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from redeō, redire, redivī(ii), reditus
rēgālibus: regal, royal; plural dative from rēgālis, rēgālis, rēgāle
rēgi: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
rēgiōnēs: regions; plural feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
retinent: they retain; 3rd person plural present active from retineō, retinere, retinūi, retentus
sē: himself
sēdit: he encamped; 3rd person singular perfect active from sedeō, sedere, sēdī, sessus
servāre: to maintain, preserve; present active infinitive from servō, servare, servāvī, servātus
similī: similar; singular ablative from similis, simile, similior -or -us, simillimus -a -um
simul: at the same time as
spondent: they promise; 3rd person plural present active from spondeo, spondere, speponēdi, sponsus
statim: immediately
supplex: suppliant; singular masculine nominative from supplex, supplicis
tōta: whole, total; singular feminine nominative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
trānsiret: he crossed over; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from trānseō, trānsire, trānsivī(ii), trānsitus
tunc: then
turba: crowd; singular feminine nominative from turba, turbae
venerat: he had come; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
venit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor, victoris
vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocō, vocare, vocāvī, vocātus
vicitātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from vocitō, vocitare, vocitāvī, vocitātus

Intereā iuxtā Wisuram dīmissa¹ manēbat
Pars exercituum rēgis, locus ipse vocātur
Hlodbeki, quō castrīs īdem sēdēre locātīs.
Sed male² sēcūrōs rēs prōspera fēcerat illōs,
Quā rēx ūsus erat, cum cūctīs hostibus esset
Terrōrī, iam tunc audente resistere nūllō.
Hinc³ erat in castrīs cautēla remissior illīs,
Ut possent nimiā Saxonum fraude nocērī.
Sōl summō coelī prōnus vergēbat⁴ ab axe,
Et vespertīnās iam tendere coepit ad hōrās;

¹Meanwhile, a part of the king's armies, having been left, remained by the Weser River.

²But badly careless the prosperous time had made them, from which the king had experienced, with all the enemies being terrified, now then no one dared to resist. Because of Charlemagne's military success, some of his soldiers became careless.

³Because of this caution was more relaxed in their camp, so that they could be harmed by the excessive fraud of the Saxons.

⁴The sun lay prone from the axis of the highest sky. This means that it was past noon.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 audente: daring; singular ablative present participle from
 audeō, audēre, ausus sum
 axe: axis; singular masculine ablative from axis, axis
 castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from castrum, castrī
 cautēla: caution; singular feminine nominative from cautēla,
 cautēlae
 coeli: heaven; singular masculine genitive from coelum, coelī
 coepit: it started; 3rd person singular present active from
 coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus
 cum: with
 cūctis: all, whole; plural ablative from cūctus, cūcta,
 cūctum
 dīmissa: having been sent away; singular feminine nominative
 perfect passive participle from dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī,
 dīmissus
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 esset: he (might) have been; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 et: and
 exercituum: of armies; plural masculine genitive from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 fēcerat: it had made; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fraude: fraud; singular feminine ablative from fraus, fraudis
 hinc: because, from here
 Hlīdbeki: modern-day Lübbecke in North Rhine-Westphalia in
 Germany
 hōrās: hours, times; plural feminine accusative from hōra, hōrae
 hostibus: enemies; plural common ablative from hostis, hostis
 idem: the same
 iam: already, now, soon
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 intereā: during
 ipse: itself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa,
 ipsum
 iuxtā: near, nearly
 locātis: having been stationed; ablative past passive
 participle from locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus
 locus: place; singular masculine nominative from locus, locī
 male: in an evil manner (adverb); adverb from malus, mala -um,
 peior -or -us, -
 manēbat: it was remaining; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 from maneo, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
 nimīa: excessive, too much; singular feminine ablative from
 nimius -a -um
 nocērī: to be harmed; passive infinitive from noceō, nocēre,
 nocuī, nocitus
 nūllō: no, none, not any; singular masculine ablative from
 nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (gen -ius)
 pars: part; singular feminine nominative from pars, partis
 possent: they (might) have had been able; 3rd person plural
 imperfect active subjunctive from possum, posse, potuī, -
 prōnus: prone, sloped; singular masculine nominative from
 prōnus, prōna, prōnum
 prospera: favorable, prosperous; singular feminine nominative
 from prosperus, prospera -um, prosperior -or -us,
 prosperrimus -a -um
 quā: with which; singular female ablative of qui
 quō: in which; singular ablative of quis
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 remissior: more relaxed, slack; singular common nominative
 from remissus, remissa -um, remissior -or -us,
 remississimus -a -um
 rēs: thing, fortune; singular feminine nominative from rēs, rei
 resistere: to resist; active infinitive from resistō, resistere,
 restitī, -
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sēcūrōs: untroubled, carefree; plural masculine accusative from
 sēcūrus, sēcūra, sēcūrum
 sed: but
 sedēre: to encamp, to sit; infinitive from sedeō, sedēre, sēdī,
 sessus
 sōl: sun; singular masculine nominative from sōl, sōlis
 summō: highest, greatest; singular masculine ablative from
 summus, summa, summum
 tendere: to draw (near); active infinitive from tendō, tendere,
 tetendī, tentus
 terrōri: terror; singular masculine ablative from terror, terrōris
 tunc: then
 ūsus: ūsus erat = had experienced; singular masculine
 nominative perfect participle from ūtor, ūtī, ūsum
 ut: so that
 vergēbat: it was laying, inclining, sloping; 3rd person singular
 imperfect from vergō, vergere, versī
 vespertinās: evening; plural feminine accusative from
 vespertinus, vespertina, vespertinum
 vocātur: it is called; 3rd person singular present passive from
 vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus
 Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany

Tunc ut equīs quīdam¹ dēferrent pābula longē,

Dē castrīs prius² ēgressī pariter rediērunt.

His sē Saxonum quoddam³ permiscuit agmen,

Fingentum⁴ sēmet sociōs animōque fidēlēs.

Tum sē quisque⁵ novō blandē sociābat amīcō,

Hostis quō saevus latuit sub nōmine tēctus.

Adhibitumque fidem verbīs fallācibus auget

Obsequium; cūctī simul in commūne labōrant,

Pars⁶ subvectat onus viridis simul utraque foenī.

¹Then so that certain (men) might carry fodder from afar for the horses.

²Having gone out previously from camp, they returned together.

³A certain Saxon band joined itself with these.

⁴Feigning to be friends and faithful in spirit.

⁵While each one talked to his 'friend' with new flatteries, in which the savage enemy lay concealed under (a false) name.

⁶And having been invited their obsequiousness increased (the) faith (that the Franks had in the Saxons) with lying words.

⁷Everyone together labored in common, and together each part shouldered the green burden of hay.

adhibitum: having been invited, summoned; singular neuter
 nominative perfect passive participle from adhibeō,
 adhibere, adhibui, adhibitus
 agmen: band, troop; singular neuter nominative from agmen,
 agminis
 amīcō: friend; singular masculine ablative from amicus, amica
 -um, amicior -or -us, amicissimus -a -um
 animō: soul, mind, live; singular masculine ablative from
 animus, animi
 auget: it increases; 3rd person singular present active from
 augeō, augēre, auxi, auctus
 blandē: flatteringly; adverb from blandus, blanda -um, blandior
 -or -us, blandissimus -a -um
 castris: forts; plural neuter ablative from castrum, castrī
 commūne: jointly, together; singular neuter accusative from
 commūne, commūnis
 cūcti: all, whole; plural masculine nominative from cūctus,
 cūcta, cūctum
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dēferrent: they transferred; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from dēferō, dēferre, dētuli, dēlātus
 ēgressi: having gone out; genitive singular perfect passive
 participle from ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressum (deponent)
 equis: horses; plural masculine ablative from equus, equi
 fallācibus: deceitful, misleading; plural ablative from fallāx,
 fallācis (gen.), fallācior -or -us, fallācissimus -a -um
 fidēles: faithful persons, confidants; plural common nominative
 from fidelis, fidele, fidelior -or -us, fidelissimus -a -um
 fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fidei
 fingentum: feigning; alternative spelling of gerund from fingō,
 fingere, finxi, fictus
 foeni: of hay; singular neuter genitive from foenum, foeni
 his: with these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 hostis: enemy; singular common nominative from hostis, hostis
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 labōrant: they labor; 3rd person plural present active from
 labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvi, labōrātus
 latuit: it lay hidden, it lurked; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from lateō, latēre, latui, -
 longē: long; adverb from longus, longa -um, longior -or -us,
 longissimus -a -um
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 novō: new; singular masculine ablative from novus, nova -um,
 novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
 obsequium: allegiance, obedience; singular neuter nominative
 from obsequium, obsequi
 onus: burden; singular neuter accusative from onus, oneris
 pābula: food, nourishment; plural neuter accusative from
 pābulum, pābuli
 pariter: equally, together
 pars: part; singular feminine nominative from pars, partis
 permiscuit: it mixed, joined, mingled; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from permisceo, permiscere, permiscui,
 permixtus
 prius: before
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quīdam: certain (men); plural masculine nominative from
 quīdam
 quis: who
 quō: what; singular ablative of quis
 quoddam: certain; singular neuter nominative of quīdam
 rediērunt: they returned; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 redeō, redire, redivi(ii), reditus
 saevus: furious; singular masculine nominative from saevus,
 saeva -um, saevior -or -us, saevissimus -a -um
 Saxōnum: Saxon, neuter adjective that modifies agmen
 sē: himself
 simul: at the same time as
 sociābat: he was allying, socializing; 3rd person singular
 imperfect active from sociō, sociāre, sociāvi, sociātus
 sociōs: associates, companions; plural masculine accusative
 from socius, soci(i)
 sub: below, under
 subvectat: it conveys; 3rd person singular present active from
 subvectō, subvectāre, subvectāvi, subvectātus
 tēctus: concealed; singular masculine nominative perfect
 passive participle from tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus
 tum: then
 tunc: then
 ut: so that
 utra: either; singular feminine nominative from uter, utra, utrum
 verbis: words; plural neuter ablative from verbum, verbī
 viridis: green; singular common accusative from viridis, viridis,
 viride

Sīc introgressī Francōrum castra dolōsī,
Quod vī nōn poterant, ēgērunt arte; sed ōlim
Est dictum 'Dolus an virtūs, quis in hoste requīrat?'¹
Dēpressōs somnō Francōs īstanter adortī²
Saxonēs, caedem nimiam fēcēre ferōcēs,
Dōnec discussō³ tandem torpōre sopōris,
Quīdam⁴ correptīs obstāre virīliter armīs
Coepērunt, pugnāque dehinc⁵ utcunque remōtā,
Scīlicet ex pactō, quod tunc angustia tālis
Dictābat, hostēs celerī rediēre recursū.
His rēx auditīs illūc properāre satēgīt⁶,
Atque satis vėlōx fugientum terga secūtus,
Prōstrāvit multōs auctōrēs crīminis huius.
Hinc ad Westfalhōs vēnit, statimque receptīs
Obsidibus, quōs trādiderant, abscesserat inde.
Ac suscēpit ovāns⁷ redeuntem Francia rēgem.

¹*Trickery or virtue, who would ask (regarding these) in an enemy?* This is a quote for Virgil's Aeneid, Book 2, line 390. This question is asked rhetorically by Coroebus, a Trojan, during the sack of Troy when he suggests that he and a small band of other Trojans defending Troy (including Aeneas) disguise themselves as Greek soldiers.

²*The Saxons instantly attacked the Franks, suppressed with sleep and the ferocious (Saxons) made a very great slaughter.*

³*Until the numbness of sleep was finally dissipated.*

⁴*Certain (Frankish soldiers), having manfully taken hold of weapons, began to oppose (the Saxons).*

⁵*And with the battle somehow withdrawn, really by agreement, that then such a tight situation dictated, the (Saxon) enemies returned (to their villages) with rapid return.* It appears that after the Franks woke up and started fighting back that the Saxons had to flee. Perhaps the Franks and Saxons made a truce; however I think it likelier that *scīlicet ex pactō* refers to the Saxon attacker noticing their now-dire situation and deciding together to flee rather than continue fighting.

⁶*Having heard these (things), the king hastened to hurry and the sufficiently fast (king) followed the backs of the fleeing (Saxons), and struck down many perpetrators of this crime.*

⁷*And the rejoicing Franks received their returning king.*

abscesserat: he had left; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from abscedō, abscedere, abscessi, abscessus
 ac: and
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adortī: adortī sunt = they attacked, sunt omitted for metrical
 reasons; singular masculine genitive perfect participle from
 adorior, adoriri, adortus sum
 an: or? rather?
 angustia: 'tight situation', small space, narrow passage, being
 boxed in; singular feminine nominative from angustia,
 angustiae
 armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
 arte: art, skill; singular feminine ablative from ars, artis
 atque: and
 auctōrēs: perpetrators, creators, authors; plural common
 accusative from auctor, auctōris
 auditis: having been heard; plural ablative past passive
 participle from audiō, audire, audivī, auditus
 caedem: slaughter; singular feminine accusative from caedēs,
 caedis
 castra: garrisons, forts, encampments; plural neuter accusative
 from castrum, castrī
 celerī: quick; singular ablative from celer, celeris -e, celerior -or
 -us, celerrimus -a -um
 coepērunt: they started; 3rd person plural perfect from coepī,
 coepisse, coepī, coeptum
 correptis: having been grasped; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from corripio, corripere, corripui, correptus
 crīminis: crimes; singular neuter genitive from crīmen, crīminis
 dehinc: from now on, from this place
 dēpressōs: having been suppressed; plural masculine accusative
 perfect passive participle from dēprimō, dēprimere,
 dēpressi, dēpressus
 dictābat: it dictated; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 dictō, dictāre, dictāvī, dictātus
 dictum: dictum est = it was said; singular neuter nominative
 perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 discussō: having been dissipated, shattered; singular masculine
 ablative perfect passive participle from discutiō, discutere,
 discussi, discussus
 dolōsī: crafty, cunning; plural masculine nominative from
 dolōsus, dolōsa, dolōsum
 dolus: trickery, deception; singular masculine nominative from
 dolus, doli
 dōnec: while, as long as, until
 ēgērunt: they did, conducted, acted; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 ex: out of, from
 fēcēre: they did, made; 3rd person plural perfect active from
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 ferōcēs: wild, bold, defiant; plural common nominative from
 ferōx, (gen.), ferōcis
 Francia: the Franks
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 Francōs: the Franks
 fugientum: fleeing; plural genitive present participle from fugiō,
 fugere, fūgī, fugitus
 hinc: from here
 hīs: these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 hoste: enemy; singular common ablative from hostis, hostis
 hostēs: enemies; plural common nominative from hostis, hostis
 huius: of this; singular genitive of hic, haec, hoc
 illūc: over there
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 instanter: instantly, violently (adverb)
 intrōgressi: intrōgressi sunt = they entered, sunt omitted for
 metrical reasons; plural masculine nominative perfect
 participle from intrōgredior, intrōgredi, intrōgressus sum
 multōs: many; plural masculine accusative from multus, multa
 -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nimiam: too much; singular feminine accusative from nimius,
 nimia, nimium
 nōn: not
 obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
 obstāre: to oppose; active infinitive from obstō, obstāre, obstiti,
 obstātus
 ōlim: one day, once upon a time
 ovāns: rejoicing; singular nominative present participle from
 ovō, ovāre, ovāvī, ovātus
 pāctō: agreement, bargain; singular neuter ablative from
 pactum, pacti
 poterant: they were able to; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from possum, posse, potuī, -
 properāre: to hurry; present active infinitive from properō,
 properāre, properāvī, properātus
 prostrāvit: he struck down; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from prosternō, prosternere, prostrāvī, prostrātus
 pugnā: fight; singular feminine ablative from pugna, pugnae
 quidam: certain (men); plural masculine nominative from
 quidam
 quis: who
 quod: what; singular neuter accusative of qui
 quōs: who; plural masculine accusative of quis
 receptis: having been received; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus
 recursū: return, running back; singular neuter ablative from
 recurro, recurrere, recucurri, recursus
 redeuntem: returning; singular common accusative present
 participle from redeō, redire, redivī(ii), reditus
 rediēre: they returned; 3rd person plural perfect from redeō,
 redire, redivī(ii), reditus
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 remōtā: having been removed; singular feminine ablative
 perfect passive participle from removeō, removēre, remōvī,
 remōtus
 requirāt: he requires, asks for; 3rd person singular present
 active subjunctive from requirō, requirere, requisivī,
 requisitus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 satēgit: he was busy, hard pressed; 3rd person singular perfect
 active from satagō, satagere, satēgī, satāctus
 satis: enough
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 scilicet: namely, really
 secūtus: secūtus + est = he followed, est omitted for metrical
 reasons
 sed: but
 sic: thus
 somnō: sleep; singular masculine ablative from somnus, somni
 sopōris: of sleep; singular masculine genitive from sopor,
 sopōris
 statim: immediately
 suscepit: he undertook, he supported; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscepī, susceptus
 tālis: such; singular common nominative from tālis, tālis, tāle
 tandem: finally
 terga: backs; plural neuter accusative from tergum, tergī
 torpore: numbness, stupefaction; singular masculine ablative
 from torpor, torpōris
 trādidērunt: they had handed over; 3rd person plural pluperfect
 active from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trādītus
 tunc: then
 utcunque: as soon as, by any means
 vėlōx: quick; singular nominative from vėlōx, vėlōcis (gen.),
 vėlōcior -or -us, vėlōcissimus -a -um
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēni, ventus
 vī: strength; singular feminine ablative from vīs, vīs,
 virīliter: strongly
 virtūs: virtue, manliness, power; singular feminine nominative
 from virtūs, virtūtis
 Westfālōs: Westphalians, members of a Saxon tribe

Cumque domum rediēns prīnceps iter accelerāret,
Comperit¹ Ausoniīs in partibus esse tirannum,
Nōmine Hrodgaudum, nova quī mōlīmina² temptāns,
Nec, quem³ rēx illī dederat, contentus honōre,
Ītalīae lātum voluit sibi subdere rēgnum.
Quippe⁴ ducem comitemque Forōiulēnsibus ipsum
Cōstituit Carolus, prīmō cum clāra⁵ triumphō
Dē Langōbardīs victor vēxilla⁶ revēxit.

¹He discovered, in parts of Ausonia/Italy, (there) to be a tyrant, named Hrodgaudum.

²Who, trying new endeavours. The new endeavours were military operations Hrodgaudum undertook to try to conquer more of Italy.

³Neither content with the honor which the king (Charlemagne) had given him.

⁴Indeed, Charlemagne had made he himself (Hrodgaudum) duke and count of the Friulian.

⁵At first glance, *clāra* appears to modify *triumphō*. However, *clāra* cannot be in the ablative since its last syllable must be short to fit the meter. Also, *triumphō* is masculine. Therefore, *clāra* must be plural neuter accusative and modify *vēxilla* in the next line.

⁶He (Charlemagne), the victor, carried back the flags of the Lombards.

accelerāret: he was speeding up; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from accelerō, accelerāre, accelerāvī, accelerātus
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 Ausoniis: in Ausonia, a poetic name for Italy
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 clāra: famous; plural neuter accusative from clārus, clāra -um, clārīor -or -us, clārissimus -a -um
 comitem: count, comrade; singular common accusative from comes, comitis
 comperit: he discovered; 3rd person singular present active from comperiō, comperīre, comperi, compertus
 cōstituit: he appointed; 3rd person singular present active from cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus
 contentus: content, satisfied, eager, from contentus, contenta, contentum
 cum: with
 dē: of, from, away from, down from
 dederat: he had given; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from dō, dare, dedī, datus
 domum: home; singular feminine accusative from domus, domūs
 ducem: leader; singular masculine accusative from dux, ducis
 esse: to be
 Forōiulēnsibus: with those living in Friuli, a historical region of northeast Italy
 honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honōris
 Hrodgaudum: Hrodgaud (or Rodgand), Duke of Friuli from 774 to 776.
 illi: to that one; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 ipsum: himself; singular masculine acc. or neuter nom. or acc. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 Italiae: Italy (genitive or locative case)
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from iter, itineris
 Langōbardis: the Lombards
 lātum: wide; singular neuter accusative
 mōlimina: exertion, effort, endeavour; plural neuter accusative from mōlimen, mōliminis
 nec: nor, not either
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nova: new; plural neuter accusative from novus, nova -um, novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
 partibus: parts; plural feminine ablative from pars, partis
 primō: first; singular masculine ablative from primus, prima, primum
 prīnceps: first man, prince; singular masculine nominative from princeps, principis
 quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
 quī: who; singular masculine nominative of quis
 quippe: indeed
 rediēns: returning; singular nominative present participle from redeō, redire, redivī(ii), reditus
 rēgnum: kingdom; singular neuter accusative from rēgnum, rēgni
 revēxit: he carried back; 3rd person singular perfect active from revehō, revehere, revēxī, revector
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdidī, subditus
 temptāns: trying; singular nominative present participle from temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus
 triumphō: triumph; singular masculine ablative from triumphus, triumphī
 tirannum: tyrant; singular masculine accusative variant spelling from tyrannus, tyrannī
 vexilla: flags, banners; plural neuter accusative from vexillum, vexillī
 victor: victor; singular masculine nominative from victor, victōris
 voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō, velle, voluī, -

Huic nimis ingrātus¹ dōnō male sollicitābat
Urbibus ex multīs populōs, ac fēcit ut ad sē
Dēficerent, iūstō Carolī sprētō dominātū.
Hōs ut comprimeret² mōtūs, nīl ipse morātus,
Strēnua quam celerī raptim vocat agmina iussū.
Cum quibus Ītaliā properāns, meritōque³ tyrannum
Interitū plēctēns, urbēs servāre⁴ receptās
Francōrum comitēs, quōs ipse locābat in illīs,
Iussit, et ut vēnit, vėlōx sīc⁵ inde recessit.
Vix Alpīnārum nivium iuga proxima caelō
Illī trānsgressō trīstis fuit obvia fāma⁶,
Ērēsburg referēns urbem, quam coeperat ōlim
Militibusque suīs mandāverat ipse tuendam,
Saxonēs expugnātam coepisse⁷, suumque
Expulsum fore praesidium violenter ab illīs.

¹(Hrodgaud), overly ungrateful to this gift, was wickedly stirring up the peoples out of many cities, and made them defect (from Charlemagne) to him, spurning the just dominion of Charlemagne.

²So that he might squash this rebellion, he (Charlemagne) himself delayed not at all, (and) very speedily called strong armies with quick command.

³And punishing the tyrant (Hrodgaud) with merited death.

⁴He ordered the counts of the Franks to guard the recovered cities. *servāre* goes with *iussit* two lines down.

⁵And in the manner he came, thus he quickly returned from there.

⁶Sad news was in the way to (meet) him. As soon as Charlemagne had crossed the Alps, a messenger met him with the bad news about the Saxon rebellion.

⁷(The messenger related) the Saxons to have begun fighting and their garrison to be expelled violently by them.

ab: from, out of, by, since
 ac: and
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from agmen, agminis
 Alpīnārum: of the Alps; plural feminine genitive from Alpīnus, Alpīna, Alpīnum
 caelō: heaven, sky; singular masculine ablative from caelus, caeli
 Caroli: of Charlemagne (genitive case), AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 celerī: quick; singular ablative from celer, celeris -e, celerior -or -us, celerrimus -a -um
 coeperat: he had started; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from coepī, coepisse, coepi, coeptus
 coepisse: to have started; perfect active infinitive from coepī, coepisse, coepi, coeptus
 comitēs: counts; plural common accusative from comes, comitis
 comprimeret: he suppressed; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from comprimō, comprimere, compressi, compressus
 cum: with
 dēficerent: they defected; 3rd person plural imperfect subjunctive from dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēcī, dēfectus
 dominātū: rule, mastery; singular masculine ablative from dominātus, dominātus
 dōnō: gift; singular neuter ablative or dative from dōnum, dōni
 Erēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day Obermarsberg
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 expugnātam: fighting; singular feminine accusative gerund from expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus
 expulsum: having been driven out; singular neuter nominative perfect passive participle from expuls.um
 fāma: report, news, rumor; singular feminine nominative from fāma, fāmae
 fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fore: to be; future active infinitive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 fuit: it was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 hōs: these; plural masculine accusative from hic, haec, hoc
 huic: to this; singular dative of hic, haec, hoc
 illī: that; singular dative from ille, illa, illud
 illis: those; plural dative or ablative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 ingrātus: ungrateful, unpleasant; singular masculine nominative from ingrātus, ingrāta, ingrātum
 interitū: death, ruin; singular neuter ablative from intereo, interire, interivī(ii), interitus
 ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 Ītaliā: Italy (accusative case)
 iuga: peaks (of a mountain); plural neuter accusative from iugum, iugī
 iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus
 iussū: order, command, decree; singular neuter ablative from iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus
 iūstō: iust, righteous; singular masculine ablative from iustus, iūsta -um, iūstior -or -us, iūstissimus -a -um
 locābat: he stationed; 3rd person singular imperfect active from locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus
 male: in an evil manner; adverb from malus, mala -um, peior -or -us, -
 mandāverat: he had entrusted; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus
 meritō: merited; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from mereō, merēre, meruī, meritus
 mīlitibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from mīles, mīlitis
 morātus: morātus est = he stayed, dwelled, delayed, est omitted for metrical reasons; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from moror, morārī, morātus sum
 mōtūs: rebellions, tumults, movements; plural masculine accusative from mōtus, mōtūs
 multīs: many; plural ablative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nil: not at all
 nimis: too much, extremely
 nivium: of snow; plural feminine genitive from nix, nivis
 obvīa: in the path
 ōlim: one day, once upon a time
 plēctēs: punishing; singular nominative present participle from plēctō, plēctere
 populōs: peoples, populaces; plural masculine accusative from

populus, populī
 praesidium: garrison; singular neuter nominative from praesidium, praesidiī
 properāns: hurrying; singular nominative present participle from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus
 proxima: nearest; plural neuter accusative from proximus, proxima, proximum
 quam: very
 quibus: with whom; plural dative or ablative of qui
 quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
 raptim: quickly, hastily
 receptās: having been recovered; plural feminine accusative perfect passive participle from recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus
 recessit: he withdrew; 3rd person singular perfect active from recedō, recedere, recessī, recessus
 referēs: reporting; singular nominative present participle from referō, referre, rettulī, relātus
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 sē: himself
 servāre: to watch over, to guard, to preserve, to save; present active infinitive from servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus
 sic: thus
 sollicitābat: he was stirring up, agitating; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sollicitō, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, sollicitātus
 sprētō: having been scorned, despised; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētus
 strēnua: brisk, vigorous; plural feminine accusative from strēnuus, strēnua, strēnuum
 suis: their; plural dative or ablative of suus
 suum: his; singular masculine accusative from suus, sui
 trānsgressō: having crossed over; singular masculine ablative perfect participle from transgredior, transgredi, transgressus sum
 trīstis: sad; singular common nominative from trīstis, trīstis, trīste
 tuendam: protecting, looking after; singular feminine accusative gerund from tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum
 tyrannum: tyrant; singular masculine accusative from tyrannus, tyranni
 urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 urbēs: cities; plural feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
 urbibus: cities; plural feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
 ut: so that
 vëlōx: quick; singular nominative from vëlōx, vëlōcis (gen.), vëlōcior -or -us, vëlōcissimus -a -um
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus
 violenter: violently
 vix: barely
 vocat: he calls; 3rd person singular present active from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Tum Sigiburg¹ aliud multō cōnāmine castrum
Oppugnāre quidem studuit, nec vincere quīvit
Gēns eadem, cupiēns ab eā rēgis legiōnēs
Pellere; sed pugnae populus Saxōnicus īnstāns,
Ā tergō circumventus² fuit atque fugātus,
Interius positīs³ simul ērumpentibus, atque
Incautōs⁴ plāgā facile sternerentibus amplā.
Hic rūmor Carolī cum primum vēnit ad aurēs,
Conventum procerum fierī praecoepit in urbe
Wormaciā, statuitque morās innectere⁵ nūllās,
Quīn⁶ lueret tantī sceleris gēns perfida poenās.
Ergo suīs exercitibus rēx undique lectīs,
Cōnātūs⁷ celer hostilēs praevertitur omnēs,
Temptāvēre quibus prīmō dēfendere sēsē.

¹*Then the same people (the Saxons) hastened to attack another castle, Sigiburg (Castle), with a great attempt, but were not able to prevail.*

²*They (the Saxon people) were surrounded from behind and put to flight.*

³*Those (Frankish soldiers) placed (within Sigiburg castle) at the same time sallied forth (from the castle to attack the fleeing Saxons).*

⁴*Striking down easily the unguarded (Saxons who were fleeing) with a great blow.*

⁵*He decided to contrive no delays.*

⁶*So that the treacherous people (the Saxons) might pay the penalties for such a crime.*

⁷*Therefore the swift king, with his chosen armies from all around, pre-empted the hostile enemy attacks, with which they had tried at first to defend themselves.*

ā: from, out of, by, since
 ab: from, out of, by, since
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliud: another; singular neuter accusative from alius, alia, aliud
 amplā: large; singular feminine ablative from amplus, ampla
 -um, amplior -or -us, amplissimus -a -um
 atque: and
 aurēs: ears; plural feminine accusative from auris, auris
 Caroli: of Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty (genitive case)
 castrum: fort, castle; singular neuter accusative from castrum,
 castrī
 celer: quick; singular masculine nominative from celer, celeris,
 celere
 circumventus: circumventus fuit = they had been surrounded;
 singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle
 from circumvenio, circumvenire, circumveni, circumventus
 praecoepit: he ordered started; 3rd person singular perfect
 active variant spelling from praecipio, praecipere, praecēpi,
 praeeptus
 cōnāmine: effort, struggle; singular neuter ablative from
 cōnāmen, cōnāminis
 cōnātus: efforts; plural masculine accusative from cōnātus,
 cōnātus
 conventum: meeting, convention; singular masculine accusative
 from conventus, conventus
 cum: with
 cupiēns: desiring; singular nominative present participle from
 cupio, cupere, cupivi, cupitus
 dēfendere: to defend; active infinitive from dēfendō, dēfendere,
 dēfendi, dēfensus
 eā: it; singular feminine ablative from is, ea, id
 eadem: the same, singular feminine nominative from idem,
 eadem, idem
 ergo: therefore
 ērumpentibus: breaking out, erupting; plural ablative present
 participle from ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpi, ēruptus
 exercitibus: armies; plural masculine ablative from exercitus,
 exercitūs
 facile: easily; adverb from facilis, facile, facilior -or -us,
 facillimus -a -um
 fieri: to happen, to occur; active infinitive from fiō, fieri, factus
 sum
 fugātus: having been routed, chased away; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from fugō, fugāre,
 fugāvi, fugātus
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 hic: this; singular masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 hostilēs: enemies; plural common accusative from hostilis,
 hostilis, hostile
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 incautōs: off one's guard, unprotected, incautious; plural
 masculine accusative from incautus, incauta -um, incautior
 -or -us, incautissimus -a -um
 innectere: to tie, fasten; active infinitive from innectō,
 innectere, innexui, innexus
 instāns: pressing forward; singular nominative present
 participle from instō, instāre, institi, -
 interius: interiorly, inside; adverb from interior, interior, interius
 lectis: chosen; plural ablative perfect passive participle from
 legō, legere, lēgi, lēctus
 legiōnēs: legions; plural feminine accusative from legiō, legiōnis
 lueret: they might pay, expiate; 3rd person singular imperfect
 active subjunctive from luō, luere, lui, lutus
 morās: delays; plural feminine accusative from mora, morae
 multō: great, many; singular masculine ablative from multus,
 multa -um, -, plurimus -a -um
 nec: nor, not either
 nūllās: no, none, not any; plural feminine accusative from
 nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (gen -ius)
 omnēs: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 oppūgnāre: to attack; active infinitive from oppūgnō,
 oppūgnāre, oppūgnāvi, oppūgnātus
 pellere: to drive away; active infinitive from pellō, pellere,
 pepuli, pulsus
 perfida: treacherous, deceitful; singular feminine nominative
 from perfidus, perfida, perfidum
 plāgā: strike, blow; singular feminine ablative from plāga,
 plāgae
 poenās: penalties, punishments; plural feminine accusative from
 poena, poenae
 populus: people, populace; singular masculine nominative from
 populus, populi
 positis: having been placed; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from pōnō, pōnere, posui, positus
 praevertitur: he pre-empted, anticipated; 3rd person singular
 present passive from praevertō, praevertēre, praeverti, -
 prīmō: first; singular masculine ablative from prīmus, prīma,
 primum
 primum: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma,
 primum
 procerum: of noblemen; plural masculine genitive from procer,
 proceris
 pugnae: to the battle; singular feminine dative from pugna,
 pugnae
 quibus: with which; plural ablative of qui
 quidem: indeed, at last
 quin: even, in fact
 quivit: they (the Saxon people) were able; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from queō, quire, quivi, quitus
 rēgis: of the king; singular masculine genitive from rēx, rēgis
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 rūmor: rumor; singular masculine nominative from rūmor,
 rūmōris
 Saxōnicus: Saxon
 sceleris: crime; singular neuter genitive from scelus, sceleris
 sed: but
 sēsē: themselves
 Sigiburg: A Saxon hillfort in Western Germany
 simul: at the same time as
 statuit: he decided; 3rd person singular present active from
 statuō, statuere, statui, statutus
 sternentibus: striking down, spreading, laying out; plural
 ablative present participle from sternō, sternere, strāvi,
 strātus
 studuit: they (the Saxon people) hastened; 3rd person singular
 perfect active from studeō, studēre, studui, -
 suis: his; plural ablative of suus
 tanti: such, so much, so great, this many; singular masculine
 genitive from tantus, tanta, tantum
 temptavere: they tried, attempted; 3rd person plural perfect
 active from temptō, temptāre, temptāvi, temptātus
 tergō: back; singular neuter ablative from tergum, tergi
 tum: then
 undique: from all sides
 urbe: city; singular feminine ablative from urbs, urbis
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō,
 venire, vēni, ventus
 vincere: to conquer; active infinitive from vincō, vincere, vicī,
 victus
 Wormaciā: Worms, a city in Germany; singular feminine ablative
 from Wormacia, Wormaciae

Nam fontēs adiēns, ubi Lyppia nāscitur amnis,
Repperit ex ipsā numerōsās gente catervās
Illic collēctās, humilēs veniamque precantēs,
Quod nōn servāssent¹ annō prōmissa priōrī.
Cum vērō Carolus clēmēns ignōsceret² illīs,
Complūrēs³, Dominō sē Chrīstō crēdere velle
Spondentēs simulācrōrumque relinquere cultūs,
Pūrgārī⁴ iussit sacrī baptismatis undā,
Servandaeque⁵ iterum fideī prōmissa recēpit
Obsidibus firmāta datīs, quibus ipse volēbat.
Ēresburg iterum firmat mūnīmine fortī,
Et iuxtā fluvium quem Lyppia dīximus ante
Castellum condēns⁶ aliud, complēvit utrumque
Militibus lectīs; tum Gallica rūsus ad arva
Regrediēns, hiemis tempus trānsēgit in aulā,
Nōmen⁷ Heristallī dederat cui barbara lingua.

¹*Because they hadn't kept the promises of the prior year.* After Charlemagne put down some of the Saxon rebellions, a group of Saxons gathered to ask for clemency, which Charlemagne granted.

²*When clement Charlemagne forgave them.* Ignōscere takes the dative instead of the accusative (hence *illīs*); the subjunctive is used because it is in a *cum* circumstantial clause.

³*Many (persons), promising themselves to want to believe in the Lord Christ and to relinquish the cult/worship of idols.*

⁴*He (Charlemagne) ordered to be purged/cleansed by the wave/waters of sacred baptism.*

⁵*He received promises of keeping faith again, confirmed with hostages being given, which he (Charlemagne) himself had wanted.* In Jaffé's critical text *servandaeque*, not *servandaeque*, is given. The dictionaries I consulted all listed *servande* as being in the vocative, which doesn't fit the context. Additionally, the third syllable must be long for to fit the meter, thus leaving three possibilities: (1) *servandaeque* represents an uncommon spelling or convention of which I am unaware, (2) it should read *servandōque*, making it an ablative gerund, or (3) the *a* was dropped due to a misprint.

⁶*And next to the river, which we above called Lyppia, building another castle, he filled both with chosen soldiers.*

⁷*To which the barbarian tongue had given the name Herstal.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
adiēns: approaching, visiting; singular nominative present participle from adeō, adire, adivī(ii), aditus
aliud: other; singular neuter nominative from alius, alia, aliud
amnis: river; singular masculine nominative from amnis, amnis
annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
ante: before
arva: fields; plural neuter accusative from arvum, arvi
aulā: court; singular feminine ablative from aula, aulae
baptismatis: baptism; singular neuter genitive from baptisma, baptismatis
barbara: barbarous; singular feminine nominative from barbarus, barbara -um, barbarior -or -us, barbarissimus -a -um
Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
castellum: castle, stronghold; singular neuter accusative from castellum, castelli
catervās: crowds; plural feminine accusative from caterva, catervae
Christō: to Christ (dative case)
clēmēns: mild, gentle, lenient; singular masculine nominative from clēmēns, (gen.), clēmētis
collectās: having been assembled, collected; plural feminine accusative perfect passive participle from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collectus
complēvit: he filled up; 3rd person singular perfect active from compleō, complēre, complēvi, complētus
complūrēs: many, several persons; plural common nominative from complūs, (gen.), complūris
condēns: building, founding; singular nominative present participle from condō, condere, condidi, conditus
crēdere: to believe; active infinitive from crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus
cui: to which; singular dative from quis
cultūs: cults, worship; plural masculine accusative from cultus, cultūs
cum: with
dātis: having been given; ablative past passive participle from dō, dare, dedi, datus
dederat: it had given; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from dō, dare, dedi, datus
diximus: we said; 1st person plural perfect active from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
Dominō: lord; singular masculine dative from dominus, domini
Erēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day Obermarsberg
et: and
ex: out of, from
fidei: of faith; singular feminine genitive from fidēs, fidēi
firmat: he hardens, fortifies; 3rd person singular present active from firmō, firmāre, firmāvī, firmātus
firmāta: having been confirmed; plural neuter accusative perfect passive participle from firmō, firmāre, firmāvī, firmātus
fluvium: river; singular masculine accusative from fluvius, fluvii
fontēs: fountains, headwaters; plural masculine accusative from fōns, fontis
forti: strong; singular ablative from fortis, forte, fortior -or -us, fortissimus -a -um
Gallica: Gallic; plural neuter accusative from Gallicus, Gallica, Gallicum
gente: people, clan, nation; singular feminine ablative from gēns, gentis
Heristalli: Herstal, a city in modern-day Belgium
hiemis: of winter; singular feminine genitive from hiemps, hiemis
humilēs: the humble (people); plural common nominative from humilis, humile, humilior -or -us, humillimus -a -um
ignōsceret: he forgave; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus
illic: there
illis: those; plural dative from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
ipsā: itself; singular feminine ablative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
ipse: himself; singular masculine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
iterum: again
iussit: he commanded; 3rd person singular perfect from iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussus
iuxtā: near, nearly
lectis: chosen; plural ablative perfect passive participle from legō, legere, lēgi, lēctus
lingua: tongue, language; singular feminine nominative from lingua, linguae
Lyppia: the Lippe, a river in modern-day Rhine-Westphalia, Germany
militibus: soldiers; plural masculine ablative from miles, militis

mūnīmine: defence, fortification, rampart; singular neuter ablative from mūnimen, mūniminis
nam: yes, truly
nāscitur: it proceeds; infinitive
nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
nōn: not
numerōsās: numerous; plural feminine accusative from numerōsus, numerōsa -um, numerōsior -or -us, numerōsissimus -a -um
obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
precantēs: praying; plural common nominative present participle from precor, precārī, precātus sum
priōri: prior, ahead, previous; singular ablative from prior, prior, prius
prōmissa: promises; plural neuter accusative from prōmissum, prōmissi
pūrgārī: to be cleansed; passive infinitive from pūrgō, pūrgāre, pūrgāvī, pūrgātus
quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
whom: what; plural dative of qui
quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
recēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus
regrediēns: returning; singular nominative present participle from regredior, regredi, regressus sum
relinquere: abandon, leave behind; active infinitive from relinquo, relinquere, reliqui, relictus
repperit: he found; 3rd person singular perfect from reperiō, reperire, reperiī, repertus
rūsus: backwards, on the flipside
sacrī: sacred; singular masculine genitive from sacer, sacra, sacrum
sē: themselves
servandae: of keeping; singular feminine genitive gerund from servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus
servāssent: they had kept, perserved; 3rd person plural pluperfect active subjunctive from servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus
simulācrōrum: of idols, images, likenesses; plural neuter genitive from simulācrum, simulācrī
spondētēs: promising; plural common nominative present participle from spondeo, spondere, spepondi, sponsus
tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus, temporis
trānsēgit: carried out; 3rd person singular perfect active from trānsigō, trānsigere, trānsēgi, trānsactus
tum: then
ubi: where, when if
undā: wave; singular feminine ablative from unda, undae
utrum: both
velle: to want; active infinitive from volō, velle, voluī, -
veniam: indulgence, kindness; singular feminine accusative from venia, veniae
vērō: truly, even so, still
volēbat: he was wanting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from volō, velle, voluī, -

Annō 777

Aspīrante¹ novī placidō cum tempore vērīs
Horrida iam trānsīsset hiems, rēx Nōviomāgum²
Adveniēns, celebrāvit ibī sollempnia Paschae.
Tum quia Saxonēs suspectōs semper habēbat,
Haud dubitāns, illōs prō libertāte tenenda³
Artibus āctūrōs variīs quodcumque valērent,
Et nisi continuī premerentur⁴ pondere bellī,
Foedera ruptūrōs⁵, sēcum conducta frequenter,
Rūrsus in illōrum patriam fortissima dūcit
Agmina: conventum placitī generālis habēre
Cum ducibus sē velle suīs dēnunciat illic.

¹*When the calm season of new spring breathing. A more idiomatic, though less strict, English translation might be: With the new season breathing the pleasant springtime breezes.*

²*The king (Charlemagne) arriving at Nōviomāgus.*

³*Not doubting, them for the holding of liberty to act with various arts, whatever they could.*

⁴*And unless pressed down by the weight of continuous war.*

⁵*Would break treaties.*

āctūrōs: to be conducted/done; plural masculine accusative
 future participle from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
 adveniēns: arriving; singular nominative present participle from
 adveniō, advenire, advēnī, adventus
 agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from agmen,
 agminis
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 artibus: arts, skills; plural feminine ablative from ars, artis
 aspirante: breathing, influencing; singular ablative present
 participle from aspirō, aspirāre, aspirāvi, aspirātus
 belli: of battle, war; singular neuter genitive from bellum, belli
 celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvi, celebrātus
 conducta: having been agreed; plural neuter accusative perfect
 passive participle from condico, condicere, condixi,
 conductus
 continūi: continually; 1st person singular perfect active from
 contineō, continēre, continui, contentus
 conventum: meeting, convention; singular masculine accusative
 from conventus, conventūs
 cum: with
 cumque: and with
 dēnūnciat: he gives notice, organizes; 3rd person singular
 present from variant spelling from dēnūntiō, dēnūntiāre,
 dēnūntiāvi, dēnūntiātus
 dubitāns: doubting; singular nominative present participle from
 dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvi, dubitātus
 ducibus: leaders; plural masculine dative from dux, ducis
 dūcit: he leads; 3rd person singular present active from dūcō,
 dūcere, dūxi, ductus
 et: and
 foedera: treaties; plural neuter accusative from foedus, foederis
 fortissima: very strong; plural neuter accusative from fortis,
 forte, fortior -or -us, fortissimus -a -um
 frequenter: frequently;
 generālis: general; singular common nominative from generālis,
 generālis, generāle
 habēbat: he had; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 habeo, habēre, habui, habitus
 habēre: to have; infinitive from habeo, habēre, habui, habitus
 haud: not, not at all
 hiems: winter; singular feminine nominative from hiems, hiemis
 horrida: dreadful, horrid; singular feminine nominative from
 horridus, horrida, horridum
 iam: already, now, soon
 ibi: there, then
 illic: there
 illōrum: of those; plural masculine or neuter genitive from ille,
 illa, illud
 illōs: that; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 libertāte: liberty; singular feminine ablative from libertās,
 libertātis
 nisi: if not, unless
 novī: new; singular neuter genitive from novus -i -um
 Nōviomāgum: a city of the Treveri, now Nijmegen, city in
 Holland; singular feminine accusative from Nōviomāgus,
 Nōviomāgi
 Paschae: Pascha, Easter; singular feminine genitive from
 Pascha, Paschae
 patriam: fatherland; singular feminine accusative from patria,
 patriae
 placidō: placid, gentle, quiet; singular masculine ablative from
 placidus, placida, placidum
 placitī: of decision, decree, court; singular neuter genitive from
 placitum, placitī
 pondere: weight, burden; singular neuter ablative from pondus,
 ponderis
 premerentur: they were pressed, overwhelmed; 3rd person
 plural imperfect passive subjunctive from premō, premere,
 pressī, pressus
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quia: because
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 ruptūrōs: to be breaking, destroying; plural masculine
 accusative future participle from rumpō, rumpere, rūpi,
 ruptus
 rūsus: backwards, on the flipside
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 sē: himself
 sēcum: with oneself
 semper: always
 sollempnia: solemnities, sacred rites; plural neuter accusative
 from sollempnis, sollempne, sollempnior -or -us,
 sollempnissimus -a -um
 suīs: their; plural dative of suus
 suspectōs: having been suspected; plural masculine accusative
 from suspectus, suspecta -um, suspectior -or -us,
 suspectissimus -a -um
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
 temporis
 tenenda: holding; singular feminine nominative future passive
 participle from teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentus
 trānsivisset: it having had passed; 3rd person singular
 pluperfect active subjunctive from trānseō, trānsire,
 trānsivi(iī), trānsitus
 tum: then
 valērent: they were able; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 subjunctive from valeo, valere, valui, valitus
 variīs: various, diverse; plural ablative from varius, varia,
 varium
 velle: to want; 2nd person singular present active imperative
 from vello, vellere, velli, vulsus
 vēris: spring; singular neuter genitive from vēr, vēris

Tantō conciliō locus est ēlēctus¹ agendō,
Quem Pāthalbrunnon² vocitant, quō nōn habet ipsa
Gēns alium nātūrālī plūs nōbilitāte
Īnsignem, quī praecipuae redimītus abundat
Fontibus et nitidīs et plūribus, et trahit inde
Barbaricae nōmen linguae sermōne vetustum.
Tunc ibi vīlla fuit tantum, nunc pontificālis
Ecclesiae⁴ cōstrūcta nitet clārissima sēdēs⁵.

¹A place was chosen for conducting such a council.

²Which they call Pathalbrunnon, in which the people themselves have another remarkable (place) of greater natural nobility (than other places in that area), which having been especially crowned abounds with springs, shimmering and plentiful. Pathalbrunnon is Aachen, a city in modern-day North Rhine-Westphalia. It is known for having many hot springs. The name Pathalbrunnon, which the narrator relates is from the barbaric (German) tongue, appears to come from *athal*, meaning noble, and *brunno*, meaning well.

³The Aachen Cathedral was constructed between 796-798 AD. At the time of its completion it was the largest cathedral north of the Alps.

⁴Normally spelled *Ecclēsiae*, but the *e* must be short to fit the meter. If poetic license was not taken, then that word could never be used, since long-long-short-long can never fit in dactylic hexameter.

⁵Now a pontifical seat (a cathedral) of the church, having been constructed, shines brightly (meaning it is a renowned building).

abundat: it abounds; 3rd person singular present active from
 abundō, abundāre, abundāvī, abundātus
 agendō: conducting, doing; singular masculine ablative gerund
 from agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
 alium: other; singular masculine accusative from alius, alia,
 aliud
 barbaricae: barbaric; singular feminine genitive from
 barbaricus, barbarica, barbaricum
 clārissima: very famous; singular feminine nominative from
 clārus, clāra -um, clārior -or -us, clārissimus -a -um
 conciliō: council; singular neuter ablative from cōnsilium,
 cōsiliū
 cōstrūcta: having been constructed; singular feminine
 nominative perfect passive participle from cōstruō,
 cōstruere, cōstrūxi, cōstrūctus
 ecclēsiae: church; singular feminine genitive from ecclēsia,
 ecclēsiae
 ēlēctus: ēlēctus est = it was chosen; singular masculine
 nominative perfect passive participle from ēligō, ēligere,
 ēlēgī, ēlēctus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 et: and
 fontibus: fountains; plural masculine ablative from fōns, fontis
 fuit: he was; 3rd person singular perfect active from sum, esse,
 fuī, futūrus
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from habeō,
 habēre, habuī, habitus
 ibi: there, then
 inde: from there, since
 insignem: distinguished; singular common accusative from
 insignis, insignis, insigne
 ipsa: itself; singular feminine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 linguae: language; singular feminine genitive from lingua,
 linguae
 locus: place; singular masculine nominative from locus, loci
 nātūrālī: natural; singular ablative from nātūrālis, nātūrālis,
 nātūrāle
 nitet: it shines, glitters, thrives; 3rd person singular present
 active from niteō, nitēre, nituī, -
 nitidīs: shining, bright; plural ablative from nitidus, nitida,
 nitidum
 nōbilitāte: fame, nobility; singular feminine ablative from
 nōbilitās, nōbilitātis
 nōmen: name; singular neuter accusative from nōmen, nōminis
 nunc: now
 plūribus: many; plural ablative from plus, (gen.), pluris
 plūs: more, from mūltus
 pontificālis: pontifical, relating to the Pope; singular common
 nominative from pontificalis, pontificalis, pontificale
 praecipuae: particular, special; singular feminine genitive from
 praecipuus, praecipua, praecipuum
 quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quō: in which; singular ablative of quis
 redimitus: having been crowned; singular masculine nominative
 perfect passive participle from redimiō, redimīre, redimī,
 redimitum
 sēdēs: seat; singular feminine nominative from sēdēs, sēdis
 sermōne: speech; singular masculine ablative from sermō,
 sermōnis
 tantō: such, so much, so great; singular masculine ablative from
 tantus, tanta, tantum
 tantum: only; singular neuter nominative from tantus, tanta,
 tantum
 trahit: it draws; 3rd person singular present active from trahō,
 trahere, trāxi, tractus
 tunc: then
 Pāthalbrunnon: Aachen, a city in modern-day North Rhine-
 Westphalia
 vetustum: ancient; singular neuter nominative from vetustus,
 vetusta, vetustum
 villa: farm, villa; singular feminine nominative from villa, villae
 vocitant: they call; 3rd person plural present active from vocitō,
 vocitāre, vocitāvī, vocitātus

Quō Carolus veniēns, collēctōs repperit omnēs
Paene ducēs, populumque simul, tōtumque senātum
Saxonum, nisi quod quīdam Widokindus¹ abinde
Aufūgit, rēgem veritus; nam cōnscius īdem²
Audācis sibimet factī multīque reātūs,
Sīfrīdum petiit Dānōrum scēptra regentem.
Porro ducēs illic aliī cum plēbe gregātī
Suppliciter cūctī veniam pācemque petentēs,
Pāruerant rēgī sub tālī conditionē,
Ut cūctā scelerum dīmissā mōle³ priōrum,
Sī post audērent eius violāre statūta,
Lībertāte simul prīscā patriāque carērent.
Quōrum⁴ tum Chrīstō sē crēdere velle professa
Magna salūtifera suscēpit turba lavācrum.
Sed simulāta⁵ fidēs versūtō prōdiit ōre,
Quod nōtum multīs fēcēre sequentia gesta.

¹Except that a certain Widokindus fled from there, having feared the king.

²For the same one (Widokindus) conscious of his audacious deed and many criminal charges, sought (refuge in the court of) Sifridus, reigning over the Danes. *sibimet* functions as an intensifier, emphasizing that the audacious deed was his own. We are not told what the deed was.

³That all having been freed from the weight of their prior crimes.

⁴Of those, then, a great crowd, having professed themselves to want to believe in Christ, undertook the health-bringing bath (i.e. baptism).

⁵But a feigned faith sprung forth from crafty mouth, which (their) subsequent acts made known to many.

abinde: from that place, thence, since
 aliī: others; plural nominative from alius, alia, aliud
 audācis: bold, daring; singular genitive from audāx, audācis (gen.), audācior -or -us, audācissimus -a -um
 audērent: they had dared; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from audeō, audēre, ausus sum
 aufūgit: he fled; 3rd person singular perfect active from aufugio, aufugere, aufugi, -
 carērent: they would lack; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from careō, carēre, carui, caritus
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty
 Christō: Christ
 collēctōs: having been collected, assembled; plural masculine accusative perfect passive participle from colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus
 conditionē: condition; singular feminine ablative from conditiō, conditiōnis
 cōnscius: conscious, aware of; singular masculine nominative from cōnscius, cōnscia, cōnscium
 crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from credo, credere, credidi, creditus
 cum: with
 cūctā: all, whole; plural neuter ablative from cūctus, cūcta, cūctum
 cūctī: all, whole; plural masculine nominative from cūctus, cūcta, cūctum
 Dānōrum: of the Danes; plural masculine genitive from Dānus, Dāni
 dīmīssa: having been forgiven, dismissed ; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dīmītto, dīmīttere, dīmīsi, dīmīssus
 ducēs: leaders; plural masculine accusative from dux, ducis
 eius: his/her/its
 factī: of the deed; singular neuter genitive from factum, factī
 fēcēre: they did, made; 3rd person plural perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fidēs: faith; singular feminine nominative from fidēs, fideī
 gesta: deeds, acts
 gregātī: having been assembled; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from gregō, gregāre, gregāvī, gregātus
 illīc: there
 lavācrum: bath, baptism (in context); singular neuter accusative from lavācrum, lavācrī
 libertāte: liberty; singular feminine ablative from libertās, libertātis
 māgna: large; singular feminine nominative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 mōle: weight; singular feminine ablative from mōles, mōlis
 multī: many; singular masculine genitive from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 multis: many; plural dative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 nam: yes, truly
 nisi: if not, unless
 nōtum: known; singular neuter nom. or acc. perfect passive participle of gnōscō, gnōscere, nōvī, nōtus
 omnes: all, every; plural common accusative from omnis, omnis, omne
 ōre: mouth; singular neuter ablative from ōs, ōris
 pācem: peace; singular feminine accusative from pāx, pācis
 paene: almost
 pāruerant: they would obey; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from pareo, parere, parui, paritus
 patriā: fatherland; singular feminine ablative from patria, patriae
 petentēs: asking for; plural common nominative present participle from petō, petere, petīvī, petītus
 petīvīt: he sought; 3rd person singular perfect active from petō, petere, petīvī, petītus
 plēbe: common people; singular feminine ablative from plēbs, plēbis
 populū: people, populace; singular masculine accusative from populus, populi
 porrō: also
 post: behind, after, since
 priōrum: of the previous; plural genitive from prior, prior, prius
 prīscā: ancient; singular feminine ablative from prīscus, prīscā, prīscum
 prōdiit: it sprung forth; 3rd person singular perfect from prōdeō, prōdire, prōdiī, prōditus
 professa: have confessed; singular feminine nominative perfect participle from profiteor, profiterī, professus sum
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quō: to which; singular ablative of quis
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 quōrum: of whom; plural masc or neut. genitive of quis

reātūs: accusation, charge; singular masculine genitive from reātus, reātūs
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 regentem: reigning; singular common accusative present participle from regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus
 rēgi: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
 repperit: 3rd person singular perfect from reperiō, reperiēre, repperī, repertus
 salūtiferum: health-bringing; singular neuter accusative from salūtifer, salūtifera, salūtiferum
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 scelerum: of crimes; plural neuter genitive from scelus, sceleris
 scēptra: scepters; plural neuter accusative from scēptrum, scēptrī
 sē: himself
 sed: but
 senātum: senate; singular masculine accusative from senātus, senātūs
 sequentia: following; plural neuter nominative present participle from sequor, sequī, sēcūtus sum
 sī: if
 sibimet: to himself; singular dative of sē with +met intensifier
 Sifrīdum: Sifrīdus, king of the Danes
 simul: together with
 simulāta: feigned, having been simulated; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from simulō, simulāre, simulāvī, simulātus
 statūta: statutes, laws; plural neuter accusative from statūtum, statūtī
 sub: below, under
 suppliciter: humbly, suppliantly
 suscēpit: in undertook; 3rd person singular perfect active from suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, susceptus
 tāli: such
 tōtum: whole, total; singular neuter accusative from tōtus, tōta, tōtum (gen -ius)
 tum: then
 turba: disturbance, quarrel, troop; singular feminine nominative from turba, turbae
 ut: so that
 velle: to want;
 veniam: indulgence, kindness; singular feminine accusative from venia, veniae
 veniēns: coming; singular nominative present participle from veniō, venire, venī, ventus
 veritus: having feared; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from vereor, verērī, veritus sum
 versūtō: crafty, cunning; singular masculine ablative from versūtus, versūta, versūtum
 violāre: to violate; present active infinitive from violō, violāre, violāvī, violātus
 Widokindus: a Saxon, likely a senator, who fled from Charlemagne, seeking refuge in the court of Sifrīdus

Tunc Sarrācēnūs¹ quīdam pervēnerat illūc,
Nōmine quī patriō dictus fuit Ībinalarbī².
Hic cum nōn paucīs sociīs ac cīvibus, ipsum
Quī comitābantur³, finēs regiōnis Hibērae
Linquentem, Carolō sē dēdidit, ac simul urbēs,
Rēx Sarrācēnūs quibus hunc praefēcerat ōlim.
Ob hōc Saxonum tandem regiōne relictā,
Gallica rēgna petit⁴; post haec Aquitānia⁵ rēgem
Īnsignem Carolum tenet ad paschālia fēsta.

¹*Then a certain Saracen arrived there. Saracen here means muslim.*

²*Who was called with his ancestral name Ībinalarbī. This is Sulayman ibn Yaqzan al-Kalbi al-Arabi, a muslim governor of Barcelona and Girona. Sulayman felt threatened by the Umayyad's and sought an alliance with Charlemagne, which led to Charlemagne's march across the Pyrenees the following year.*

³*This (man, the Saracene governor), with not a few of his allies and cities, who (plural) were allying with him, leaving the borders of the region of Spain, gave up to Charlemagne, and together the cities, which the Saracene king had formerly given to this one (the Saracene governor).*

⁴*On account of this finally having left the Saxon region, he sought for the Gallic land. After this Aquintania holds the distinguished King Charlemagne for the Paschal (Easter) Feast. Charlemagne needed to head west out of Saxony into Gallia in order to prepare for a march into Hispania.*

⁵*Typically spelled Aquītānia (with a macron over the first i); I've omitted that macron so that it can fit the meter by being short-short-long-short-short.*

ac: and
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Aquitānia: Aquitaniae, a province in western France; singular feminine nominative from Aquitānia, Aquitāniae
 Carolō: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (dative case)
 Carolum: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (accusative case)
 cīvibus: citizens; plural common ablative from cīvis, cīvis
 comitābantur: they had allied; 3rd person plural imperfect from comitor, comitārī, comitātus
 cum: with
 dēdidit: he surrendered, gave up; 3rd person singular perfect active from dedo, dedere, dedidi, deditus
 dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from
 fēsta: festivals; plural neuter accusative from fēstus, fēsta, fēstum
 finēs: boundaries, limits; plural common accusative from finis, finis
 Gallica: Gallic; plural neuter accusative from Gallicus, Gallica, Gallicum
 haec: these; plural neuter accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 Hiberāe: of Spain
 hic: this; singular masculine nominative of hic, haec, hoc
 hōc: this; sing. masc. or neut. abl. of hic, haec, hoc
 hunc: this; singular masculine accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 Iḥnālārbi: Sulayman ibn Yaḡzan al-Kalbi al-Arabi, a muslim governor of Barcelona and Girona
 illūc: over there
 insignem: distinguished; singular common accusative from insignis, insignis, insigne
 ipsum: himself; singular masculine acc. or neuter nom. or acc. from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 linquentem: leaving, abandoning; singular common accusative present participle from linquō, linquere, liqui, lictus
 nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
 nōn: not
 ob: for, because of, towards
 ōlim: one day, once upon a time
 Paschālia: Paschal (related to Easter); plural neuter nominative from paschālis, paschālis, paschāle
 patriō: fatherly, ancestral; singular masculine ablative from patrius, patria, patrium
 paucis: few; plural masculine ablative from paucus, pauci
 pervēnerat: he had arrived; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
 petit: he sought; 3rd person singular present active from petō, petere, petivī, petitus
 post: behind, after, since
 praefēcerat: he had put in command; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from praeficiō, praeficere, praefeci, praefectus
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quibus: which; plural dative or ablative of qui
 rēgem: king; singular masculine accusative from rēx, rēgis
 regiōne: region; singular feminine ablative from regiō, regiōnis
 regiōnis: regions; singular feminine genitive from regiō, regiōnis
 rēgna: kingdoms; plural neuter accusative from rēgnum, rēgnī
 relictā: having been left behind; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from relinquo, relinquere, reliqui, relictus
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Sarrācēnūs: a muslim
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 se: himself
 simul: at the same time as
 sociis: associates, companions; plural masculine ablative from socius, socii
 tandem: finally
 tenet: it holds; 3rd person singular present active from teneō, tenere, tenui, tentus
 tunc: then
 urbēs: cities; plural feminine accusative from urbs, urbis

Hortātū Sarrācēnī cum sē memorātī¹
Hispanās urbēs quāsdam sibi subdere posse
Haud frūstrā spērāret, eō sua maxima coepit
Agmina per celsōs Wascōnum dūcere montēs.
Quī cum primā Pyreneī iuga iam superāset,
Ad Pompēlōnem, quod fertur nōbile castrum
Esse Navarrōrum, veniēns id coeperat armīs;
Trāiciēnsque vadō fāmōsum flūmen Hibērum,
Caesāris² Augustī quandam dē nōmine dictam
Urbem praecipuam terrīs penetrāvit in illīs.
Acceptīs tamen obsidibus, quōs Ībinalarbī
Iam dictus pariterque³ suā dē gente fidēlēs
Illūstrēsque virī dederant, sīc inde recessit.
Ac Pompēlōnem rediēns, dēiēcērat⁴ eius
Ad terram mūrōs, fieret nē forte rebellis.

¹*With the exhortation of the aforesaid Saracen, he hoped not in vain to be able to subdue to himself certain Spanish cities.*

²*He entered in those lands a certain city named after Caesar Augustus.* The city is modern-day Zaragoza, which was called Caesaraugusta prior to the muslim invasion. The name Zaragoza derives from the second and following syllables of Caesaraugusta. In the critical text the word is spelled *Cesaris*. Zaragoza lies by the Ebro river. The scansion on this line is difficult; my best solution is that *Caesāris* be scanned as a dactyl, which makes everything else fall into place.

³*However having received hostages, which the already mentioned Sulayman, together with faithful and illustrious (men) from his own people, had given.*

⁴*And returning to Pamplona, he had thrown to the ground its walls, that there might not be rebellion.* The *i* in *dēiēcērat* is consonantal, so its syllables are long-long-short-short.

ac: and
acceptis: having been accepted, received; plural ablative perfect passive participle from accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptus
ad: to, towards, at, according to
agmina: marching armies; plural neuter accusative from agmen, agminis
armis: with weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
Augusti: Augustus; (title of Octavius Caesar, Emperor, 27 BC-14 AD); of all emperors; singular masculine genitive from Augustus, Augusti
Caesaris: of Caesar
castrum: castle, fort; singular neuter nominative from castrum, castrī
celsōs: high, tall; plural masculine accusative from celsus, celsa, celsum
coeperat: he had begun (to attack); 3rd person singular pluperfect active from coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus
coepit: he started; 3rd person singular present active
cum: with
dē: of, from, away from, down from
dederant: they had given; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from dō, dare, dedī, datus
dēiēcērat: he had thrown down, overthrew; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from deicio, deicere, dejeci, dejectus
dictam: having been said; singular feminine accusative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
dictus: having been said; singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
dūcere: to lead; present active infinitive from dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus
eius: his/her/its
eō: (because of) this; 3rd person singular ablative from is, ea, id
esse: to be
fāmōsum: famed; singular neuter accusative from famosus, famosa -um, famosior -or -us, famosissimus -a -um
fertur: it is said, related; 3rd person singular present passive from ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
fidēlēs: faithful persons, confidants; plural common nominative from fidelis, fidele, fidelior -or -us, fidelissimus -a -um
fieret: it happened; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from fiō, fieri, factus sum
flūmen: river; singular neuter accusative from flūmen, flūminis
forte: by chance
frūstrā: futile
gente: people, nation; singular feminine ablative from gēns, gentis
haud: not, not at all
Hiberum: the Ebro River, which flows through Zaragoza (accusative case)
Hispānās: Spanish, of Spain; plural feminine accusative from Hispanus, Hispana, Hispanum
hortātū: encouragement, exhortation; singular neuter ablative from hortor, hortari, hortatus sum
iam: already, now, soon
Ibinalarbī: Sulayman ibn Yaqzan al-Kalbi al-Arabi, a muslim governor of Barcelona and Girona
id: it (the castle in Pamplona)
illīs: those; plural ablative from ille, illa, illud
illūstrēs: illustrious; plural masculine nominative from illūstris, illūstre
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
inde: from there, since
iuga: peaks, mountain ridges; plural neuter nominative from iugum, iugī
maxima: very large; plural neuter accusative from māgnus, māgna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
memorātī: aforementioned, having been remembered; singular masculine genitive perfect passive participle from memorō, memorāre, memorāvi, memorātus
montēs: mountains; plural masculine accusative from mōns, montis
mūrōs: city wall; plural masculine accusative from mūrus, mūrī
Navarrōrum: of the Kingdom of Navarre, a Basque kingdom
nē: not
nōbile: noble, famous; singular neuter nominative from nobilis, nobile, nobilior -or -us, nobilissimus -a -um
nōmine: name; singular neuter ablative from nōmen, nōminis
obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
pariter: together
penetrāvit: he entered, he penetrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from penetrō, penetrāre, penetrāvi, penetrātus
per: through
Pompēlonem: Pamplona, a Spanish city
posse: to be able; present active infinitive from possum, posse, potuī, -
praecipuam: particular, special; singular feminine accusative from praecipuus, praecipua, praecipuum
prīma: first; singular feminine nominative from prīmus, prīma, primum

Pyrēnēi: of the Pyrenee mountains
quāsdam: certain; plural masculine accusative of quis
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quod: which; singular neuter accusative of qui
quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
rebellis: rebellious; singular common nominative from rebellis, rebellis, rebelle
recessit: he withdrew; 3rd person singular perfect active from recedō, recedere, recessi, recessus
rediens: returning; singular nominative present participle from redeō, redire, redivi(ii), reditus
Sarrācēnī: of the Saracen (muslim)
sē: himself
sibi: to himself; singular dative of sē
sic: thus
spēraret: he had hoped; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from spērō, spērāre, spērāvi, spērātus
sua: his; plural neuter accusative from suus
subdere: to place under; present active infinitive from subdō, subdere, subdidi, subditus
superāvisset: he (might) have overcome; 3rd person singular pluperfect active subjunctive from superō, superāre, superāvi, superātus
tamen: however
terram: land
terris: lands; plural feminine ablative from terra, terrae
trāiciens: transferring, transporting, passing through; singular nominative present participle from trāiciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectus
urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
urbēs: cities; plural feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
vadō: by means of the shallows; singular neuter ablative from vadum, vadi
veniēns: coming; singular nominative present participle from veniō, venire, veni, ventus
virī: man; plural masculine nominative from vir, viri
Wasconum: of the Basques; variant spelling from Vasconēs

Cumque¹ Pyreneī regressus ad intima saltūs,
Mīlite cum lassō² callēs trāscenderet artōs
Īnsidiās eius summō sub vertice montis
Tendere Wascōnēs ausī, nova praelia temptant.
Dēnique postrēmōs populī rēgālis adortī,
Missilibus prīmō sternunt ex collibus altīs,
Et Francōs, quamvis³ armīs animīsque priōrēs,
Impār fēcit et angustus locus īferiōrēs.
Rēx iam praecessit, tardumque remānserat agmen,
Cūra vehendārum⁴ quod rērum praepediēbat.
Fit⁵ pavor hinc exercitibus, subitōque tumultū
Turbantur, victrīx latrōnum turba nefanda
Ingentem rapuit praedam, plūrēsque necāvit.

¹It appears that the scansion of this line is SDSDDS.

²(When) with his weary soldier(s) he (Charlemagne) crossed the narrow path, the Basques dared to stage an ambush under the highest peak of the mountain, trying to wage new battles. *mīlites* is best translated as a collective singular: with weary soldiers.

³And the Franks who were below, although they were better (than the Basques) in arms and spirit, the narrow place made unequal (to the Basques).

⁴Already the king had proceeded (through the mountain pass) and the slow army had remained, which the care of carrying the things had delayed. The Basques attacked the baggage train at the rear of Charlemagne's army. This attack occurred at the Roncevaux Pass. A famous song, the Song of Roland, was later composed about the event.

⁵From here there was a fear amongst the army, and they were thrown into confusion by the sudden tumult, and the victorious nefarious band of robbers seized great plunder and killed many.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 adortī: having been attacked; singular masculine genitive perfect participle from adorior, adoriri, adortus sum
 agmen: marching army; singular neuter nominative from agmen, agminis
 altis: high; plural masculine ablative from altus -a -um
 angustus: small space, narrow passage, being boxed in; singular masculine nominative from angustus, angusta -um, angustior -or -us, angustissimus -a -um
 animīs: souls, minds, lives; plural feminine ablative from anima, animae
 armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armī
 artōs: close, narrow; plural masculine accusative from artus, arta -um, artior -or -us, artissimus -a -um
 ausi: having dared; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from audeō, audēre, ausus sum. audeō is semi-deponent, so we take the active meaning based on context.
 callēs: paths; plural feminine accusative from callis, callis
 collibus: hills; plural masculine ablative from collis, collis
 cum: with
 cūra: care, concern, supervision; singular feminine nominative from cūra, cūrae
 dēnique: finally
 eius: his/her/its
 et: and
 ex: out of, from
 exercitibus: armies; plural masculine dative from exercitus, exercitūs
 fēcīt: he did; 3rd person singular perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fit: it happened, it occurred; 3rd person singular present active from fiō, fieri, factus sum
 Francōs: the Franks
 hinc: from here
 iam: already, now, soon
 impar: unequal; singular nominative from impar, (gen.), imparis
 inferiōrēs: lower; plural common accusative from inferus, infera, inferum
 ingentem: huge, enormous; singular common accusative from ingēns, ingentis (gen.), ingentior -or -us, ingentissimus -a -um
 insidiās: ambushes, plots; plural feminine accusative from insidia, insidiae
 intima: inmost parts; plural neuter accusative from intimus, intima, intimum
 lassō: tired, weary; singular masculine ablative from lassus, lassa, lassum
 latrōnum: of plunderers, robbers, brigands; plural masculine genitive from latrō, latrōnis
 locus: place; singular masculine nominative from locus, loci
 milite: soldier; singular masculine ablative from miles, militis
 missilibus: missiles, javelins; plural ablative from missilis, missilis, missile
 montis: of the mountain; singular masculine genitive from mōns, montis
 necāvit: it killed, destroyed; 3rd person singular perfect active from necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus
 nefanda: impious, wicked; singular feminine nominative from nefandus, nefanda, nefandum
 nova: new, inexperienced; singular feminine nominative from novus, nova -um, novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
 pavor: fear, trembling; singular masculine nominative from pavor, pavōris
 plūrēs: more; plural common nominative from plus, (gen.), pluris
 populi: people, populace; singular masculine genitive from populus, populi
 postrēmōs: very last; plural masculine accusative from postremus, postrema, postremum
 praecessit: he proceeded, excelled; 3rd person singular perfect active from praecēdō, praecēdere, praecessi, praecessus
 praedam: plunder; singular feminine accusative from praeda, praedae
 praelia: battles; plural neuter accusative from praelium, praeliī
 praepediēbat: it was hindering, shackling, fettering; 3rd person singular imperfect active from praepediō, praepedire, praepedivī, praepeditus
 prīmō: first; singular masculine dative from prīmus, prīma, primum
 priōrēs: prior, ahead, previous; plural common nominative from prior, prior, prius
 Pyrēnēi: of the Pyrenees Mountains
 quamvis: as much, as much as one wants, however
 quod: what; singular neuter nom. or acc. of qui
 rapuit: he seized, pillaged; 3rd person singular perfect active from rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus
 rēgālis: regal, royal; singular common nominative from rēgālis, rēgālis, rēgāle
 regressus: return; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from regredior, regredi, regressus sum
 remāserat: he had remained; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from remaneō, remanēre, remānsi, remānsus
 rērum: of things; plural feminine genitive from rēs, rei
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 saltūs: of the narrow pass, mountain defile; singular masculine genitive from saltus, saltūs
 sternunt: they cast down, scattered, covered; 3rd person plural present active from sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus
 sub: below, under
 subitō: suddenly
 summō: highest, greatest; singular masculine ablative from summus, summa, summum
 tardum: slow; singular neuter nominative from tardus, tarda -um, tardior -or -us, tardissimus -a -um
 temptant: they tried; 3rd person plural present active from temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātus
 tendere: to aim, plan, stretch, extend; present active infinitive from tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus
 trāscenderet: he was crossing over; 3rd person singular imperfect active subjunctive from trāscendō, trāscendere, trāscendī, trāscēnsus
 tumultū: uproar; singular masculine ablative from tumultus, tumultūs
 turba: troop, band; singular feminine nominative from turba, turbae
 turbantur: they are disturbed, confused; 3rd person plural present passive from turbō, turbāre, turbāvī, turbātus
 vehendārum: of carrying; plural feminine genitive future passive participle from vehō, vehere, vēxī, vectus
 vertice: peak; singular masculine ablative from vertex, verticis
 victrix: conquering; singular feminine nominative from victrix, which is a defective adjective that is only available in the feminine
 Wascōnēs: the Basques, a group that lived just west of the Pyrenees

Namque palātīnī quīdam¹ cecidēre ministrī,
Commendāta quibus rēgālīs cōpia gāzae,
Praedōnēs² illōs spoliīs dītāvit opīmīs.
His gestīs, hostēs vastī per dēvia saltūs
Fūgērunt, celeranter; erant quibus ardua montis
Abdita³ silvārum vallis loca nōta profundē
Quōs fuga dīlāpsōs⁴ investigābilis et nox
Īnstāns ēripuit, sequerētur ut ultio⁵ nūlla.
Ac facinus tantum quoniam permānsit inultum,
Trīstia⁶ rēgālī subdūxit nūbila mentī,
Prōspera quam fēcēre prius complūra serēnam.

¹And certain palace ministers fell (in death), to whom the supplies of the royal treasuries had been committed.

²This is spelled *predones* in the critical text.

³These things being done, the vast host (army of the Basques) fled through devious (places) of the mountain pass quickly, to whom were deeply-known (*nōta profundē*) steep hidden places (*ardua loca abdita*) of the forests of the mountain valley.

⁴Whom, having slipped away by fleeing, the oncoming unsearchable night snatched away (from the Franks being able to find and pursue them). It appears that *fugā* ought to be in the ablative, yet to fit the meter it must have two short syllables.

⁵So that no vengeance followed. *ultiō* is often spelled with a macron, but cannot be here due to the meter. The line scans as SDDDDS.

⁶It drew sad clouds to the regal mind (of Charlemagne), which many properous (things) had previously made serene.

abdita: hidden; plural masculine nominative from abditus -a -um
 ac: and
 ardua: steep, high, lofty, difficult; plural neuter nominative from arduus, ardua -um, arduior -or -us, arduissimus -a -um
 cecidēre: they fell (in death); 3rd person plural perfect active from cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus
 celeranter: quickly;
 commendāta: having been entrusted; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from commendō, commendāre, commendāvī, commendātus
 complūra: many (things); plural neuter nominative from complus, compluris
 cōpia: supplies, wealth; singular feminine nominative from cōpia, cōpiae
 dēvia: devious, out-of-the-way (places); plural neuter accusative from dēvius -a -um
 dilāpsōs: having slipped away; plural masculine accusative perfect participle from dilābor, dilābi, dilāpsus sum
 dītāvit: it enriched; 3rd person singular perfect active from dītō, dītāre, dītāvī, dītātus
 erant: they were
 ēripuit: it snatched away; 3rd person singular perfect active from ēripio, ēripere, ēripui, ēreptus
 et: and
 facinus: crime, outrage; singular neuter nominative from facinus, facinoris
 fēcēre: they did, made; 3rd person plural perfect active from faciō, facere, fēcī, factus
 fugā: by flight, escape; singular feminine ablative from fuga, fugae
 fūgērunt: they fled; 3rd person plural perfect active from fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus
 gazae: of the treasures; singular feminine genitive from gaza, gazae
 gestis: having been carried out; plural ablative perfect passive participle from gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
 hīs: these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
 hostēs: enemies; plural common nominative from hostis, hostis illōs: those; plural masculine accusative from ille, illa, illud
 instāns: oncoming; singular nominative present participle from instō, instāre, institī, -
 inultum: unavenged; singular neuter nominative from inultus, inulta, inultum
 investigābilis: unsearchable; singular common nominative from investigābilis, investigābilis, investigabile
 loca: places; plural neuter nominative from locum, loci
 menti: to the mind; singular feminine dative from mēns, mentis
 ministri: ministers; plural masculine nominative from minister, ministri
 montis: of the mountain; singular masculine genitive from mōns, montis
 namque: for and in fact, on the other hand
 nōta: known; plural neuter nominative perfect passive participle from nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus
 nox: night; singular feminine nominative from nox, noctis
 nūbila: clouds; plural neuter accusative from nūbilus, nūbila, nūbilum
 nūlla: no, not any; singular feminine nominative from nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (gen -ius)
 opīmis: rich, well-fed, fat, fertile; plural ablative from opīmus, opīma, opīmum
 palātīni: palace, imperial; plural masculine nominative from Palatinus, Palatina, Palatinum
 per: through
 permansit: it remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from permaneo, permanere, permansi, permansus
 praedōnēs: robbers, thieves; plural masculine accusative from praedō, praedōnis
 prius: before
 profundē: profoundly; adverb from profundus, profunda, profundum
 prospera: favorable, prosperous; plural neuter nominative from prosperus, prospera -um, prosperior -or -us, prosperrimus -a -um
 quam: how? how much?
 quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
 quibus: to whom; plural ablative of quī
 quoniam: after
 quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
 rēgālī: regal, royal; singular dative from rēgālis, rēgālis, rēgāle
 rēgālis: regal, royal; singular common genitive from rēgālis, rēgālis, rēgāle
 saltūs: narrow passes, mountain defiles; plural masculine genitive from saltus, saltus
 sequeretur: it followed; 3rd person singular subjunctive imperfect from sequor, sequi, secutus
 serēnam: serene; singular feminine accusative from serēnus, serēna, serēnum
 silvārum: of forests; plural feminine genitive from silva, silvae
 spoliis: spoils, booty; plural neuter ablative from spolium, spoliū
 subdūxit: it lead off; 3rd person singular perfect active from subdūcō, subdūcere, subdūxī, subductus
 tantum: so much, so great, this many; singular neuter nominative from tantus, tanta, tantum
 tristia: sad; plural neuter accusative from trīstis, trīstis, trīste
 ultiō: vengeance, revenge; singular feminine nominative from ultiō, ultiōnis
 ut: so that
 vallis: of the valley; singular feminine genitive from vallis, vallis
 vāstī: immense; plural masculine nominative from vāstus, vāsta -um, vāstior -or -us, vāstissimus -a -um

Aptum praetereā sē tempus habēre putantēs

Saxonēs ulciscendī¹ quam plūrima dampna

Ā Francīs illāta sibī, quia rēx erat absēns,

Īnfēstō² Rhēnī petiērunt agmine litus.

Quem³ trānsīre tamen nūllā ratiōne valentēs,

Francōrum terrās in eādem parte iacentēs⁴

Quā vēnēre nimis vastāre ferōciter ausī,

Ā mūrīs urbis, quae dicta Diūtia nunc est,

Dōnec perveniās ubi Rhēnus cōnfluit īdem,

Lītoribusque ferēns fontēs Mūsella Liēī.

¹And then the Saxons thinking to themselves (sē putantēs) the time to be apt to have revenge for the many damages brought to them by the Franks.

²With hostile army they sought the shore of the Rhine.

³Which, however, they were not able to cross by any way.

⁴They dared to excessively and ferociously ravage the lands of the Franks lying on the same part (of the Rhine) to which they had come.

ā: from, out of, by, since
 absēns: absent; singular masculine nominative from absēns, (gen.), absēntis
 agmine: marching army; singular neuter ablative from agmen, agminis
 aptum: apt, suitable, ready; singular neuter accusative from aptus -a -um
 ausī: having dared; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from audeō, audēre, ausus sum. audeō is semi-deponent, so we take the active meaning based on context.
 cōnfluit: it flows together; 3rd person singular present active from cōnfluō, cōnfluere, cōnfluxi, cōnfluxus
 dampna: damages, injuries; plural neuter nominative from dampnum, dampni
 dictā: is called, having been said; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus
 Diutia: Duisburg: a city along the Rhine, about 100 miles north of the confluence of the Lahn and Moselle, which occurs at Koblenz
 dōnec: while, as long as, until
 eādem: the same, singular feminine ablative
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
 ferēns: bringing, bearing; singular nominative present participle from ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
 ferōciter: ferociously
 fontēs: headwaters, fountains; plural masculine nominative from fōns, fontis
 Francis: the Franks
 Francōrum: of the Franks
 habēre: to have; present active infinitive from habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus
 idem: the same
 iacentēs: laying; plural common nominative present participle from iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, iacitus
 illāta: having been brought in; plural neuter nominative perfect passive participle from inferō, inferre, intuli, illātus
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 infestō: unsafe, dangerous, hostile; singular neuter ablative from infestus -a -um
 Liēi: the Lahn, a tributary of the Rhine
 litoribus: beaches, shores; plural neuter ablative from litus, litoris
 litus: beach, shore; singular neuter accusative from litus, litoris
 mūrīs: city walls; plural masculine ablative from mūrus, mūrī
 Mūsella: Moselle, a tributary of the Rhine
 nimis: too much, extremely
 nūllā: no, none, not any; singular feminine ablative from nūllus, nūlla, nūllum (gen -ius)
 nunc: now
 parte: part; singular feminine ablative from pars, partis
 pervenias: you arrive; 2nd person singular present active subjunctive from perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus
 petiērunt: they sought for; 3rd person plural perfect active from petō, petere, petivī, petitus
 plūrima: very many; plural neuter nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 praetereā: and also
 putantēs: thinking; plural common nominative present participle from putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus
 quā: in which; singular female ablative of qui
 quae: which; singular feminine nominative
 quam: how? how much?
 quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
 quia: because
 ratiōne: reason; singular feminine ablative from ratiō, ratiōnis
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Rhēnī: the Rhine; singular masculine genitive from Rhēnus, Rhēnī
 Rhēnus: the Rhine; singular masculine nominative from Rhēnus, Rhēnī
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 sē: themselves
 sibi: to himself; singular dative of se
 tamen: however
 tempus: time, period; singular neuter accusative from tempus, temporis
 terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 trānsire: to go over, to cross; present active infinitive from trānseō, trānsire, trānsivi(iū), trānsitus
 ubi: where, when if
 ulciscendī: avenging, punishing; singular masculine genitive future participle from ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum
 urbis: city; singular feminine genitive from urbs, urbis
 valentēs: being healthy, able, strong; plural common nominative present participle from valeo, valere, valui, valitus
 vāstāre: to lay waste, to devastate, to ravage; present active infinitive from vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus
 vēnēre: they came; 3rd person plural perfect active from veniō, venire, vēnī, ventus

Cūnctās quās poterant vīllās invādere, flammīs

Trādiderant. Ipsīs etiam nōn īra pepercit

Ecclesiīs¹, nec erat hominum caedis modus ūllus.

Nōn aliquod sexūs, aetātis, condiciōnis

Ūllius furor immītis² discrīmen agēbat;

Omnia sed ferrum vel edāx cōnsūmpserat³ ignis.

Hinc nōn praedandī studiō⁴, sed ut ultio⁵ quaedam

In Francōs fieret, hoc eōs gessisse probātur.

¹Spelled *Aecclesiis* in the critical text. The second syllable is short for it to fit the meter; the line scans as
DDDSDS.

²*The cruel furor made no distinction, not of sex or age or any other condition.*

³*But the sword or greedy fire had consumed all.*

⁴*Hence not out of eagerness of plundering, but in order that a certain vengeance might occur against the Franks,
it is proved that they had done this.*

⁵Normally spelled *ultiō*; the Saxon poet appears to use it with a short final syllable.

aetātis: of age; singular feminine genitive from aetās, aetātis
 agēbat: it carried out; 3rd person singular imperfect active from
 agō, agere, ēgī, actus
 aliquod: anyone; neuter singular nominative or accusative from
 aliqui
 caedis: of slaughter; singular feminine genitive from caedis,
 caedis
 condiōnis: condition; singular feminine genitive from condiō,
 condiōnis
 cōsūmpserat: it had consumed; 3rd person singular pluperfect
 active from cōsūmō, cōsūmere, cōsūmpsi, cōsūptus
 cūctās: all, whole; plural feminine accusative from cūctus,
 cūcta, cūctum
 discrīmen: distinction, division; singular neuter nominative from
 discrīmen, discrīminis
 ecclēsīis: churches; plural feminine dative from ecclēsia,
 ecclēsiae
 edāx: greedy, gluttonous, voracious, destructive; singular
 nominative from edāx, edācis (gen.), edācior -or -us,
 edācissimus -a -um
 eōs: to them; plural masculine accusative from is, ea, id
 erat: he was; 3rd person singular imperfect active from sum,
 esse, fui, futūrus
 etiam: still
 ferrum: iron; singular neuter nominative from ferrum, ferrī
 fieret: it might happen; 3rd person singular imperfect active
 subjunctive from fiō, fieri, factus sum
 flammīs: flames; plural feminine dative from flamma, flammae
 Francōs: the Franks
 furor: frenzy, rage, madness; singular masculine nominative
 from furor, furōris
 gessisse: to have born, carried; perfect active infinitive from
 gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
 hinc: hence, from here
 hoc: this; singular neuter accusative of hic, haec, hoc
 hominum: of persons, of men; plural masculine genitive from
 homō, hominis
 īgnis: fire; singular masculine nominative from īgnis, īgnis
 immitis: savage, cruel; singular common nominative from
 immitis, immīte, immītiōr -or -us, immītissimus -a -um
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from invādō,
 invādere, invāsi, invāsus
 ipsīs: itself; plural dative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 ira: anger; singular feminine nominative from ira, īrae
 modus: limit; singular masculine nominative from modus, modī
 nec: nor, not either
 nōn: not
 omnia: all, every; plural neuter accusative from omnis, omnis,
 omne
 pepercit: it spared, saved; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus
 poterant: they were able to; 3rd person plural imperfect active
 from possum, posse, potui, -
 praedandī: of pillaging; genitive gerund from praedor, praedārī,
 praedātus
 probātur: it is shown, proved; 3rd person singular present
 passive from probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus
 quaedam: a certain; singular feminine nominative from quīdam
 quās: who; plural female accusative of quis
 sed: but
 sexūs: sex (male or female); singular masculine genitive from
 sexus, sexūs
 studiō: eagerness; singular neuter ablative from studium, studiū
 trādiderant: they had handed over; 3rd person plural pluperfect
 active from trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus
 ūllius: of any; singular genitive from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum (gen -ius)
 ūllus: any; singular masculine nominative from ūllus, ūlla, ūllum
 (gen -ius)
 ulitiō: vengeance, revenge; singular feminine nominative from
 ulitiō, ulitiōnis
 ut: so that
 vel: or
 villās: houses; plural feminine accusative from villa, villae

Hoc rēx Hispānīs didicit¹ regressus ab hōrīs.

Tunc orientālēs² Francōs nec nōn Alamannōs

Obvia ferre iubet statim Saxonibus arma.

Quōs cum iam patriam redeuntēs īnsequerentur,

In Baddanfeldun—sīc est locus ille vocātus—

Ādernam iuxtā fluvium cōstanter in ipsōs

Irruerant, nūtūque³ Deī quem crīmina tanta

In populō commissa suō dampnāre decēbat,

Saxonēs tantā cecidērunt strāge perēptī,

Ut dē praegrandī superessent agmine paucī.

¹The king learned this, having returned from the time with the Spaniards.

²Then he ordered the eastern Franks, and also the Alamanni, to immediately bear the available weapons against the Saxons.

³And by the will of God it was fitting for such crimes, having been committed amongst his people, to be punished.

ab: from, out of, by, since
Adernam: the Eder river, which flows in North Rhine-Westphalia
agmine: marching army; singular neuter ablative from agmen, agminis
Alamannos: the Alamanni, a confederation of Germanic tribes incorporated into the Frankish kingdom by Clovis I in 496 AD.
arma: weapons; plural neuter accusative from armum, armī
Baddenfeldun: Battenfeld, Germany
cecidērunt: they fell; 3rd person plural perfect active from cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsus
commissa: having been committed; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from committō, committere, commisi, commissus
cōstanter: constantly
crīmina: judicial decisions, verdicts; plural neuter accusative from crīmen, crīminis
cum: with
dampnāre: to condemn; present active infinitive variant spelling from damnō, dampnāre, dampnāvī, dampnātus
dē: of, from, away from, down from
decēbat: it was fitting; 3rd person singular imperfect active from decet, decēre, decuit, -
Deī: of god; singular masculine genitive from Deus, Dei
didicit: he learned; 3rd person singular perfect active from discō, discere, didici, discitus
est: he is; 3rd person singular present active from sum, esse, fui, futūrus
ferre: to bring, to bear; person present active from ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
fluvium: river; singular masculine accusative from fluvius, fluvī
Francōs: the Franks
Hispanis: Hispanics; plural ablative from Hispanus, Hispana, Hispanum
hoc: this; singular neuter accusative of hic, haec, hoc
hōris: time, seasons, hours; plural feminine ablative from hōra, hōrae
iam: already, now, soon
ille: that; singular masculine nominative from ille, illa, illud
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
insequerentur: they had followed; 3rd person plural subjunctive imperfect from insequor, insequi, insecutus
ipsōs: themselves
irruerant: they had forced their way in; 3rd person plural pluperfect active from irruō, irruere, irruī, irrutus
iubet: he commands; 3rd person singular present active from iubeō, iubere, iussi, iussus
iuxtā: near, nearly
locus: place; singular masculine nominative from locus, loci
nec nōn: and also
nōn: not
nūtū: will, command, will; singular masculine ablative from nūtus, nūtūs
obvia: at hand, available; plural neuter accusative from obvius -a -um
orientālēs: eastern; plural common nominative from orientālis, orientālis, orientāle
patriamland: father; singular feminine accusative from patria, patriae
pauci: few; plural masculine nominative from paucus, pauci
perempti: having been killed, destroyed; plural masculine nominative perfect passive participle from perimo, perimere, peremi, peremptus
populō: peoples, populaces; singular masculine ablative from populus, populi
praegrandi: very large (army); singular masculine ablative from praegrans, praegrans
quem: which, singular masculine accusative of qui
quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
redeuntēs: returning; plural common nominative present participle from redeō, redire, redi(vi), reditus
regressus: having returned; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from regredior, regredi, regressus sum
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
Saxonēs: the Saxons
Saxonibus: the Saxons
sic: thus
statim: immediately
strāge: overthrow, destruction; singular feminine ablative from strāgēs, strāgis
suō: their; singular ablative of suus
superessent: they had survived, been left over; 3rd person plural imperfect active subjunctive from supersum, superesse, superui, superfutūrus
tantā: so much, so great; singular feminine ablative from tantus, tanta, tantum
tunc: then
ut: so that
vocātus: est vocātus = was called; singular masculine

nominative perfect passive participle from vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

Vēre¹ novō Carolus causā poscente peragrāns

Gallōrum quondam terrās, ad Wirciniācum

Accessit vīcum. Quō tunc occurrit eīdem

Dux Spōlētānus², Hildībrandus vocitātus.

Quī pretiōsa³ ferēns īsignī mūnera rēgī,

Ad sua⁴ cum magnō satis est dīmissus honōre.

At rēx intentē meditāns invādere terrās

Saxōnum, citius Rhēnum trāiēcērat⁵ amnem.

Cui⁶ sē spē vānā gēns ipsa resistere posse

Cōnfidēns, pariter sūmptīs occurrerat armīs,

In quōdam collēcta locō Bōcholt vocitātō.

¹*With the new spring, Charlemagne, as circumstances demanded, traveling the lands, formerly of the Gauls, came to the town of Verzenay.*

²Hildeprand was the Duke of Spoleto from 774 to 789. The Duchy of Spoleto is located in Italy. There had been a dispute between Pope Hadrian I and Charlemagne over who had suzerainty over that duchy; this was likely the motivating factor for Hildeprand to go to France with treasure to meet with Charlemagne.

³Spelled *preciōsa* in the critical text.

⁴*To his (lands, places) he was dismissed with great honor.* Here *sua* must be plural neuter accusative: it cannot be ablative based on the meter, and must be accusative since it is the object of *ad*. What it refers to is implied; *loca* (places) a reasonable option.

⁵The *i* in *trāiēcērat* is consonantal, so its syllables are long-long-short-short.

⁶*To whom, confident in themselves with vain hope to be able to resist, the people themselves, likewise having taken up arms, had run, collected into a certain place called Bocholt.*

accessit: he approached; 3rd person singular perfect active
 from accēdō, accēdere, accessi, accessus
 ad: to, towards, at, according to
 amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, anni
 armis: weapons; plural neuter ablative from armum, armi
 at: and
 Bocholt: Bocholt, a city in North Rhine-Westphalia
 Carolus: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and
 Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the
 Carolingian Dynasty
 causā: cause, reason; singular feminine ablative from causa,
 causae
 citius: swifter; singular neuter accusative from citus, cita -um,
 citior -or -us, citissimus -a -um
 collēcta: having gathered; singular feminine nominative perfect
 passive participle from colligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus
 cōfidēs: trusting, believing; singular nominative present
 participle from cōfidō, cōfidere, cōfīsus sum
 cui: to whom; singular dative from quis
 cum: with
 dimissus: he was sent away (est omitted for metrical reasons);
 singular masculine nominative perfect passive participle
 from dimittō, dimittere, dimisi, dimissus
 dux: leader; singular masculine nominative from dux, ducis
 eī: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
 ferēs: bringing, bearing; singular nominative present participle
 from ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
 Gallōrum: of the Gauls; plural masculine genitive from Gallus,
 Galli
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 Hildebrandus: Hildebrand, Duke of Spoleto from 774 to 789
 honore: honor; singular masculine ablative from honor, honoris
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 insigni: distinguished; singular dative from insignis, insignis,
 insigne
 intentē: intently, attentively
 invādere: to invade; present active infinitive from invādō,
 invādere, invāsi, invāsus
 ipsa: itself; singular feminine nominative from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
 locō: place; singular masculine ablative from locus, loci
 māgnō: large; singular masculine ablative from māgnus, māgna
 -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 meditāns: thinking about; singular masculine nominative
 present participle from meditor, meditārī, meditātum
 mūnera: gifts; plural neuter accusative from mūnus, mūneris
 novō: new; singular masculine ablative from novus, nova -um,
 novior -or -us, novissimus -a -um
 occurrerat: he had run; 3rd person singular pluperfect active
 from occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursus
 occurrit: he met, ran; 3rd person singular perfect from occurrō,
 occurrere, occurri, occursus
 pariter: likewise, together
 peragrāns: traveling over; singular nominative present
 participle from peragrō, peragrāre, peragrāvī, peragrātus
 pōscēte: demanding; singular ablative present participle from
 pōscō, pōscere, popōsci, -
 posse: to be able; present active infinitive from possum, posse,
 potui, -
 pretiōsa: precious; plural neuter accusative from pretiōsus,
 pretiōsa -um, pretiōsior -or -us, pretiōsissimus -a -um
 quī: who; singular masculine nominative of quis
 quōdam: in a certain; singular ablative of quidam
 quondam: formerly, at one time
 rēgi: king; singular masculine dative from rēx, rēgis
 resistere: to resist; present active infinitive from resistō,
 resistere, restiti, -
 rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
 Rhēnum: the Rhine; singular masculine accusative from Rhēnus,
 Rhēni
 satis: enough
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sē: themselves
 spēs: hope; singular feminine ablative from spēs, spei
 Spōlētānus: of the Duchy of Spoleto, located in the region of
 Umbria, Italy
 sua: his; plural neuter accusative from suus
 sūmptis: having been taken up; plural ablative perfect passive
 participle from sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūmptus
 terrās: lands; plural feminine accusative from terra, terrae
 trāiēcērat: they had transferred, transported; 3rd person
 singular pluperfect active from trāiciō, trāicere, trāiēcī,
 trāiectus
 tunc: then
 vānā: empty, vain; singular feminine ablative from vānus, vāna,
 vānum
 vēre: spring; singular neuter ablative from vēr, vēris
 vicum: village; singular masculine accusative from vicus, vici
 vocitātō: having been called; singular masculine ablative perfect
 passive participle from vocitō, vocitāre, vocitāvī, vocitātus
 vocitātus: having been called; singular masculine nominative
 perfect passive participle from vocitō, vocitāre, vocitāvī,
 vocitātus
 Wirciniacum: Verzenay, a town in north-eastern France

Sed cum coepissent¹ aciē cōflīgere, statim
Terga dedit, numerō Francōrum territa grandī.
Accēpit tunc Westfālōs in dēditiōnem.
Prōgressusque dehinc, Wisuram pervēnit ad amnem,
Atque diēs aliquot mānsit statiōne² locāta.
Angariōs sed et Ostfālhōs ad sē venientēs
Prōmissam firmāre fidem, quā sēmet eīdem
Subiectōs³ fore spondēbant, animōque fidēlēs,
Obsidibusque datīs sacrāmentīsque coēgit.
Hīs gestīs rēx Wormaciam remeāvit ad urbem.

¹*But, having had started to fight in a battle line, suddenly they (the Saxon people, refers to gens on the previous page) turned their backs, having been terrified by the great number of Franks.*

²Spelled *stacione* in the critical text.

³*Subiectōs* has a consonantal *i* and consists of three long syllables.

accēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus
aciē: battle line; singular feminine ablative from aciēs, aciēi
ad: to, towards, at, according to
aliquot: quite a lot
amnem: river; singular masculine accusative from amnis, amnis
Angariōs: the Angarians, a Saxon tribe
animō: soul, mind, live; singular masculine ablative from animus, animi
atque: and
coēgit: he collected, he forced; 3rd person singular perfect active from cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coactus
coepissent: they (might) have had started; 3rd person plural pluperfect active subjunctive from coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus
cōnfligere: to fight; present active infinitive from cōnfligō, cōnfligere, cōnflixī, cōnfllictus
cum: with
datīs: having been given; plural ablative past passive participle from dō, dare, dedī, datus
dedit: he gave; 3rd person singular perfect active from dō, dare, dedī, datus
dēditionem: surrender, capitulation; singular feminine accusative from dēditio, dēditionis
dehinc: from now on, from this place
diēs: day; singular common accusative from diēs, diēi
ei: to him, her, or it; singular dative from is, ea, id
et: and
fidēlēs: faithful persons, confidants; plural common accusative from fidelis, fidele, fidelior -or -us, fidelissimus -a -um
fidem: faith; singular feminine accusative from fidēs, fidei
firmāre: to harden, confirm; present active infinitive from firmō, firmāre, firmāvī, firmātus
fore: to be; future active infinitive from sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
Francōrum: of the Franks
gestis: having been carried out; plural ablative perfect passive participle from gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
grandi: great, grand, imposing; singular ablative from grandis, grandis, grande
hīs: to these; plural masculine ablative of hic, haec, hoc
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
locātā: having been stationed; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus
mānsit: he remained; 3rd person singular perfect active from maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsus
numerō: number, division, troop; singular masculine ablative from numerus, numeri
obsidibus: hostages; plural common ablative from obses, obsidis
Ostfālōs: Eastphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
pervēnit: he arrived; 3rd person singular perfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
prōgressus: having advanced; singular masculine nominative perfect participle from prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum
prōmissam: having been promised; singular feminine accusative perfect passive participle from prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisi, prōmissus
quā: what; singular female ablative of qui
remeāvit: he returned; 3rd person singular perfect active from remeō, remeāre, remeāvī, remeātus
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
sacrāmētis: sacraments; plural neuter ablative from sacramentum, sacramenti
sēmet: themselves (-met is an intensifier)
sed: but
spondēbant: they were promising; 3rd person plural imperfect active from spondeō, spondere, spondi, spōnsus
statim: immediately
statiōne: outpost, station; singular feminine ablative from statio, statiois
subiectōs: having been subjected; plural masculine accusative perfect passive participle from subicio, subicere, subjeci, subjectus
terga: backs; plural neuter accusative from tergum, tergī
territa: having been frightened; singular feminine nominative perfect passive participle from terreō, terrere, terrui, territus
tunc: then
urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
venientēs: coming; plural common nominative present participle from veniō, venire, veni, ventus
Westfalōs: Westphalians, members of a Saxon tribe
Wisuram: the River Weser, the second longest river in Germany
Wormacia: Worms, a city in Germany; singular feminine nominative from Wormacia, Wormaciae

Annō 780

Inde movēns ōportūnō¹ sua tempore castra,
Saxōnum rūrsus properāverat in regiōnem.
Ēresburg prīmō petiit, post haec ubi fontēs
Lyppia flūmen habet, perplūrima² dispositūrus
In castrīs aliquot fertur³ mānsisse diēbus.
Hinc orientis⁴ iter sūmēns, ad flūmen Ovaccrum
Vēnit, et eiusdem gentis quam maxima turba
Illūc praeceptō pārēns occurrerat, atque
Crēdere sē Chrīstō simulāns baptisma recēpit.

¹*From there moving his camp at an opportune time.*

²*Planning to arrange many things.*

³*It is said he remained in the camp for many days.*

⁴*From here taking a trip eastward.*

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 aliquot: quite a lot
 annō: year; singular masculine ablative from annus, annī
 atque: and
 baptisma: baptism; plural neuter accusative from baptismum, baptismi
 castra: forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
 castrīs: forts; plural neuter ablative from castrum, castrī
 Christō: Christ
 crēdere: to believe; present active infinitive from credo, credere, credidi, creditus
 diēbus: days; plural common ablative from diēs, diēi
 dispositūrus: for arranging; singular masculine nominative future participle from dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositus
 eius: his/her/its
 Erēsburg: a Saxon refuge castle near modern-day Obermarsberg
 et: and
 fertur: it is said; 3rd person singular present passive from ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus
 flūmen: river; singular neuter nominative from flūmen, flūminis
 fontēs: headwaters, fountains; plural masculine accusative from fōns, fontis
 gentis: of the people, clan, nation; singular feminine genitive from gēns, gentis
 habet: he has; 3rd person singular present active from habeo, habere, habuī, habitus
 haec: these; plural neuter accusative from hic, haec, hoc
 hinc: from here
 illūc: over there
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 iter: journey, trip; singular neuter accusative from iter, itineris
 Lyppia: the Lippe, a river in modern-day Rhine-Westphalia, Germany
 mānsisse: to have remained; perfect active infinitive from maneo, manere, mānsi, mānsus
 maxima: very big, biggest; singular feminine nominative from magnus, magna -um, major -or -us, maximus -a -um
 movēns: moving; singular nominative present participle from moveo, movere, movi, motus
 occurrerat: he had run; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursus
 oportūnō: opportune; singular masculine ablative from oportūnus, oportūna -um, oportunior -or -us, opportunissimus -a -um
 orientis: East; singular masculine genitive from oriēns, orientis
 Ovaccrum: probably the Oker River, a tributary of the River Aller, in Lower Saxony
 pārēns: obeying; singular nominative present participle from pareo, parere, paruī, pārēns
 petivī: he asked for; 3rd person singular perfect active from peto, petere, petivī, petitus
 plūrima: very many; singular feminine nominative from multus, multa -um, -, plūrimus -a -um
 post: behind, after, since
 praeceptō: having been ordered; singular masculine ablative perfect passive participle from praecipiō, praecipere, praecēpi, praeceptus
 prīmō: first; singular masculine ablative from prīmus, prīma, primum
 properāverat: he hurried; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus
 quam: how? how much?
 recēpit: he received; 3rd person singular perfect active from recipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus
 regiōnem: region; singular feminine accusative from regiō, regiōnis
 rūsus: backwards, on the flipside
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sē: themselves
 simulāns: feigning, simulating; singular nominative present participle from simulō, simulāre, simulāvī, simulātus
 sua: his; plural neuter accusative from suus
 sūmēns: taking up; singular nominative present participle from sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus, temporis
 turba: crowd; singular feminine nominative from turba, turbae
 ubi: where, when if
 vēnit: he came; 3rd person singular present active from veniō, venire, vēni, ventus

Indeque¹ festīnus pergēns, ibi castra locāvit,
Albia quā grandis fluvius miscētur et Ōra.
Nam rēs Saxōnum voluit compōnere, nec nōn
Sclāvōrum, medius quōs Albia dīvidit amnis.
Citrā³ Saxonēs dēgunt, in lītore vērō
Sclāvōrum pāgāna manet gēns ulteriōrī.
Dispositīs sānē rēbus prō tempore cūctīs⁴,
Ad sēdēs tandem studuit remeāre paternās.

¹And from there continuing on quickly, he stationed a camp there, in the place where the grand river Elbe is mixed with the Ohre river (alternatively, the shore).

²For he wanted to arrange the things of the Saxons, and also of the Slavs, whom divides in the middle with the River Elbe.

³On this side the Saxons live, and on beyond the shore dwell the pagan Slavs.

⁴Having arranged everything well for (that) time.

ad: to, towards, at, according to
 Albia: of the River Elbe; variant spelling from Albi, Albi
 amnis: river; singular masculine genitive from amnis, amnis
 castra: forts; plural neuter accusative from castrum, castrī
 citrā: on this side
 compōnere: to put together; present active infinitive from
 compōnō, compōnere, composuī, compositus
 cūctis: all, whole; plural ablative from cūctus, cūcta,
 cūctum
 dēgunt: they live; 3rd person plural present active from dēgō,
 dēgere, dēgī, -
 dispositis: having been arranged, distributed; plural ablative
 perfect passive participle from dispōnō, dispōnere,
 disposui, dispositus
 dīvidit: it divides; 3rd person singular present active from
 dividō, dividere, dīvisī, dīvisus
 et: and
 festīnus: swift, fast, hastening; singular masculine nominative
 from festīnus, festīna, festīnum
 fluvius: river; singular masculine nominative from fluvius, fluvī
 gēns: people, clan, nation; singular feminine nominative from
 gēns, gentis
 grandis: great, grand, imposing; singular common nominative
 from grandis, grandis, grande
 ibi: there, then
 in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
 inde: from there, since
 lītore: beach, shore; singular neuter ablative from lītus, lītis
 locāvit: he stationed; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus
 manet: it (the Slavic people) remains; 3rd person singular
 present active from maneō, manēre, māsī, māsus
 medius: middle; singular masculine nominative from medius,
 media, medium
 miscētur: it is mixed; 3rd person singular present passive from
 misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus
 nam: yes, truly
 nec nōn: and also
 nōn: see nec nōn
 Ōra: likely means the Ohre river, a left tributary to Elbe;
 singular feminine nominative
 pāgāna: pagan; singular feminine nominative from paganus,
 pagana, paganus
 paternās: paternal (fatherland); plural feminine accusative from
 paternus, paterna, paternum
 pergēns: continuing on; singular nominative present participle
 from pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus
 prō: for, in favor of, before, in place of
 quā: in which; singular female ablative of qui
 quōs: whom; plural masculine accusative of quis
 rēbus: things; plural feminine ablative from rēs, rei
 remeāre: to come back, return; present active infinitive from
 remeō, remeāre, remeāvī, remeātus
 rēs: things; singular feminine accusative from rēs, rei
 sālē: healthfully, soundly; adverb from sānus, sāna, sānum
 Saxonēs: the Saxons
 Saxōnum: of the Saxons
 sēdēs: residence, habitation; plural feminine accusative from
 sēdēs, sēdis
 studuit: was eager for; 3rd person singular perfect active from
 studeō, studēre, studuī, -
 tandem: finally
 tempore: time, period; singular neuter ablative from tempus,
 temporis
 ulteriōri: farther, last; singular ablative from -, -, ulterior -or -us,
 ultimus -a -um
 Sclāvōrum: of the Slavs
 vērō: truly, even so, still
 voluit: he wanted; 3rd person singular perfect active from volō,
 velle, voluī, -

Tum quia praecipuō semper flagrābat amōre
Petrī¹, quī summe praeclārus apostolus exstat,
Ipsius Rōmae dēcrēvit līmina sāncta
Quaerere², vōta precēsque Deō persolvere³ cūrāns.
Atque citus properāns, assūptā coniuge⁴ sēcum
Et nātīs, urbem pervēnerat ad Ticinēsem,
In quā nātālis Dominī fēstum celebrāvit.
Hīc igitur statuī prīmae cum fine decādis
Annōrum Carolī, postquam rēx coeperat esse
Francōrum sōlus, prīmum finīre libellum,
Vīribus⁵ ut parvīs requiēs sōlātia praestet.

¹*Then because he always burned with special love for Peter, the famous apostle who was most prominent.* The spelling of *exstat* is *extat* in the critical edition.

²The critical text spells this *querere*. However, *querere* is the singular imperative of *querī* (to complain or grumble) which fits neither grammatically nor contextually. Therefore I have corrected it to *quaerere*.

³*Taking care to perform vows and prayers to God.*

⁴*Coniuge* has a consonantal *i* and its syllables are long-short-short.

⁵*So that rest might lend solace to my little strength.*

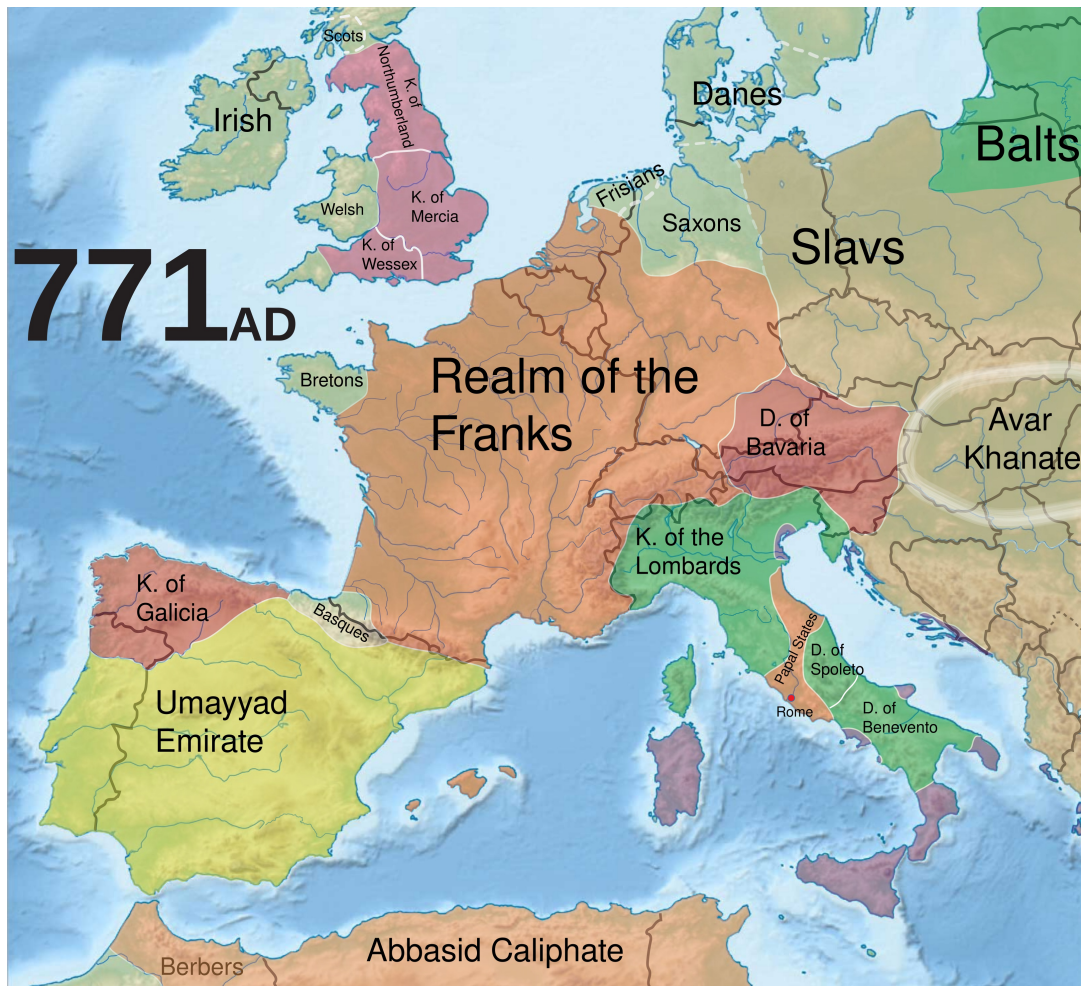
ad: to, towards, at, according to
amōre: with love; singular masculine ablative from amor, amōris
annōrum: of years; plural masculine genitive from annus, anni
apostolus: apostle; singular masculine nominative from apostolus, apostoli
assūptā: having been taken up; singular feminine ablative perfect passive participle from sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus
atque: and
Carolī: Charlemagne, AD 748-814, King of the Franks and Emperor of the Western Roman Empire, member of the Carolingian Dynasty (genitive case)
celebrāvit: he celebrated; 3rd person singular perfect active from celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus
citus: swift; singular masculine nominative from citus -a -um
coeperat: he had started; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from coepio, coepere, coepi, coeptus
coniuge: spouse; singular common ablative from conjunx, conjugis
cum: with
cūrāns: taking care; singular nominative present participle from cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus
decādis: of the decade; singular feminine genitive from decas, decadis
dēcrēvit: he decided; 3rd person singular perfect active from dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus
deō: to God; singular masculine dative from Deus, Dei
Domini: of the lord; singular masculine genitive from dominus, domini
esse: to be
et: and
exstat: he stands out, exists; 3rd person singular present active from exstō, exstāre, -, -
fēstum: festival; singular neuter accusative from fēstus, fēsta, fēstum
fine: boundary, end, limit; singular common ablative from finis, finis
finire: to finish; present active infinitive from finiō, finire, finivī, finitus
flagrābat: he was burning; 3rd person singular imperfect active from flagrō, flagrāre, flagrāvī, flagrātus
Francōrum: of the Franks
hic: here
igitur: therefore
in: into (with accusative), in (with ablative)
ipsius: of itself; singular genitive from ipse, ipsa, ipsum
libellum: little book; singular masculine accusative from libellus, libelli
līmina: thresholds, doorsteps, houses; plural neuter accusative from limen, liminis
nātālis: birthday; singular common nominative from natalis, natalis, natale
nātis: children; plural ablative perfect participle from nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum
parvis: small; plural feminine dative from parvus, parva -um, minor -or -us, minimus -a -um
persolvere: to pay, perform; present active infinitive from persolvō, persolvere, persolvī, persolūtus
pervenerat: he had arrived; 3rd person singular pluperfect active from perveniō, pervenire, pervēni, perventus
Petri: Peter; singular masculine genitive from Petrus, Petri
postquam: since, since then, after
praecipuō: particular, special; singular masculine ablative from praecipuus, praecipua, praecipuum
praeclārus: very famous, remarkable; singular masculine nominative from praeclārus, praeclāra, praeclārum
praestet: it might lend; 3rd person singular subjunctive present
precēs: prayers; plural feminine accusative from prex, precis
primae: first; singular feminine genitive from primus, prima, primum
primum: first; singular neuter nominative from prīmus, prīma, primum
properāns: hurrying; singular nominative present participle from properō, properāre, properāvī, properātus
quā: in which; singular female ablative of qui
quaerere: to seek
quī: who; plural masculine nominative of quis
quia: because
requiēs: rest, repose; singular feminine nominative from requiēs, requiētis
rēx: king; singular masculine nominative from rēx, rēgis
Rōmae: of Rome; singular feminine genitive from Rōma, Rōmae
sāncta: holy, saint
sēcum: with himself
semper: always
sōlātia: comfort, relief, solace; plural neuter accusative from solatium, solatii
sōlus: alone; singular masculine nominative from sōlus, sōla, solum (gen -ius)

statuī: I decided; 1st person singular perfect from statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus
summe: exceedingly; adverb from summus, summa, summum
Ticinēsem: Ticino, one of the cantons (regions) of Switzerland
tum: then
urbem: city; singular feminine accusative from urbs, urbis
ut: so that
vīribus: strength; plural feminine dative from vīs, vīs
vōta: vows; plural neuter accusative from vōtum, vōti

Bibliography

Jaffé, Philipp, ed. Bibliothēca rērum Germanicarāum. Tomus quārtus, Monumenta Carolīna. Berlin: Weidmann, 1867. <https://archive.org/details/monumentacaroli00unkngoog>

Maps



This map is a modified version of Europe in 771 CE via Wikimedia Commons (CC BY-SA 4.0). https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:771_CE,_Europe.svg

Maps on the following page were generated with the help of OpenStreetMap data for river outlines: therefore some map data © OpenStreetMap contributors, licensed under ODbL. <https://www.openstreetmap.org/copyright>

Overview map of key cities with modern-day boundaries in gray.

